

# WORKSHEETS

## Irregular Verbs

| Infinitive form | Simple past | Past participle | Infinitive form | Simple past | Past participle |
|-----------------|-------------|-----------------|-----------------|-------------|-----------------|
| be              | was/were    | been            | let             | let         | let             |
| beat            | beat        | beaten          | lie             | lay         | lain            |
| become          | became      | become          | light           | lit*        | lit             |
| begin           | began       | begun           | lose            | lost        | lost            |
| bend            | bent        | bent            | make            | made        | made            |
| bite            | bit         | bitten          | mean            | meant       | meant           |
| bleed           | bled        | bled            | meet            | met         | met             |
| blow            | blew        | blown           | mow             | mowed       | mowed/mown      |
| break           | broke       | broken          | pay             | paid        | paid            |
| bring           | brought     | brought         | put             | put         | put             |
| build           | built       | built           | read            | read        | read            |
| buy             | bought      | bought          | ride            | rode        | ridden          |
| catch           | caught      | caught          | ring            | rang        | rung            |
| choose          | chose       | chosen          | run             | ran         | run             |
| come            | came        | come            | say             | said        | said            |
| cost            | cost        | cost            | see             | saw         | seen            |
| cut             | cut         | cut             | sell            | sold        | sold            |
| do              | did         | done            | send            | sent        | sent            |
| draw            | drew        | drawn           | shake           | shook       | shaken          |
| dream           | dreamt*     | dreamt          | shine           | shone       | shone           |
| drink           | drank       | drunk           | shoot           | shot        | shot            |
| drive           | drove       | driven          | show            | showed      | showed/shown    |
| eat             | ate         | eaten           | shut            | shut        | shut            |
| fall            | fell        | fallen          | sing            | sang/sung   | sung            |
| feed            | fed         | fed             | sit             | sat         | sat             |
| feel            | felt        | felt            | sleep           | slept       | slept           |
| fight           | fought      | fought          | smell           | smelt*      | smelt           |
| find            | found       | found           | speak           | spoke       | spoken          |
| fly             | flew        | flown           | spell           | spelt*      | spelt           |
| forget          | forgot      | forgotten       | spend           | spent       | spent           |
| freeze          | froze       | frozen          | stand           | stood       | stood           |
| get             | got         | got/gotten      | steal           | stole       | stolen          |
| give            | gave        | given           | swim            | swam        | swum            |
| go              | went        | gone            | take            | took        | taken           |
| grow            | grew        | grown           | teach           | taught      | taught          |
| have            | had         | had             | tear            | tore        | torn            |
| hear            | heard       | heard           | tell            | told        | told            |
| hide            | hid         | hidden          | think           | thought     | thought         |
| hit             | hit         | hit             | throw           | threw       | thrown          |
| hold            | held        | held            | understand      | understood  | understood      |
| hang            | hung        | hung            | upset           | upset       | upset           |
| hurt            | hurt        | hurt            | wake            | woke        | woken           |
| keep            | kept        | kept            | wear            | wore        | worn            |
| know            | knew        | known           | win             | won         | won             |
| lay             | laid        | laid            | write           | wrote       | written         |
| learn           | learnt*     | learnt          |                 |             |                 |
| leave           | left        | left            |                 |             |                 |
| lend            | lent        | lent            |                 |             |                 |

**NOTE :** *dream, learn, light, smell, spell* can also have regular forms.  
*dreamed, learned, lighted, smelled, spelled*

# ELS-WORKSHEETS

## Sophomore

### CONTENTS

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>Unit 1</b> ..... 1-7<br><i>going to Future (plans/intentions)</i><br><i>for + time phrase/How long?</i><br>Expressing purpose  | <b>Unit 11</b> ..... 83-92<br>Describing people and places  |
| <b>Unit 2</b> ..... 8-10<br><i>going to Future</i><br>(Future predictions with strong evidence in the present)  | <b>Unit 12</b> ..... 93-104<br>Comparative and Superlative forms of Adjectives and Adverbs  |
| <b>Unit 3</b> ..... 11-16<br>Simple Future: <i>will/won't</i>   | <b>Unit 13</b> ..... 105-113<br>The Passive<br>Simple Present/Simple Past   |
| <b>Unit 4</b> ..... 17-21<br><i>going to Future or Simple Future (will/won't)</i>   | <b>Unit 14</b> ..... 114-119<br>The Passive<br>Present Continuous/Past Continuous   |
| <b>Unit 5</b> ..... 22-31<br>REVISION OF TENSES<br>Simple Present<br>Present Continuous<br>Simple Past<br>Future ( <i>going to/will</i> )<br>Questions with <i>how often</i><br>Expressing frequency of actions<br>Question Tags<br><br><b>REVISION TEST 1</b><br><b>TEST YOUR VOCABULARY 1</b> | <b>Unit 15</b> ..... 120-130<br>The Passive<br>Present Perfect<br>Future ( <i>going to/will</i> )<br><br><b>REVISION TEST 3</b><br><b>TEST YOUR VOCABULARY 3</b>  |
| <b>Unit 6</b> ..... 37-45<br>Indefinite pronouns<br>Prepositions<br><i>-ing</i> Constructions   | <b>Unit 16</b> ..... 136-149<br>Modals<br>Ability: <i>can/could/be able to</i><br>Obligation: <i>have to/must/mustn't/needn't</i><br>Advisability: <i>should</i><br>Possibility: <i>must/may (not)/can't</i><br>Preference: <i>would rather/would prefer</i><br>Passive with Modals |
| <b>Unit 7</b> ..... 46-56<br>Simple Past and Past Continuous<br><i>When/While</i> sentences<br><i>As/Just as</i>  | <b>Unit 17</b> ..... 150-155<br>Question Tags<br><i>too and either</i><br><i>so and nor/neither</i><br><i>I think so, I hope not, etc.</i>  |
| <b>Unit 8</b> ..... 57-64<br>Present Perfect Simple<br>Talking about previous experiences<br>Simple Past ( <i>with a definite time in the past</i> )<br>Present Perfect Simple<br>Talking about past actions with results in the present  | <b>Unit 18</b> ..... 156-160<br>Quantifiers<br><i>a few, a little, too many, too much, etc.</i>   |
| <b>Unit 9</b> ..... 65-69<br>Present Perfect Simple ( <i>with for/since</i> )<br>Simple Past ( <i>with ago</i> )<br>Questions with <i>when/how long</i>   | <b>Unit 19</b> ..... 161-169<br>Present Perfect Continuous<br><i>since, for, how long</i><br>Present Perfect Simple or Continuous   |
| <b>Unit 10</b> ..... 70-77<br>REVISION OF TENSES<br>Simple Present<br>Present Continuous<br>Simple Past<br>Past Continuous<br>Present Perfect<br><br><b>REVISION TEST 2</b><br><b>TEST YOUR VOCABULARY 2</b>  | <b>Unit 20</b> ..... 170-178<br>Gerunds and Infinitives<br><br><b>REVISION TEST 4</b><br><b>TEST YOUR VOCABULARY 4</b><br><br><b>TEST YOURSELF 1</b><br><b>TEST YOURSELF 2</b><br><b>TEST YOURSELF 3</b><br><b>TEST YOURSELF 4</b>  |

# UNIT 1

## going to: expressing plans and intentions about the future

### Study the box.

### going to

Use **going to** when you are talking about your future plans or intentions

Tomorrow morning, I'm **going to ride** my bicycle along the seashore.

We **are going to do** some shopping at the weekend.

Sally **isn't going to come** on the picnic with us because she's **going to visit** her grandmother in hospital.

1

Complete the dialogue with "going to" and a verb from the box.

spend    stay    ✓ drive    read    wash  
be        help        have       dig        buy

Sally: Are you free this weekend?

Ruth: No, I'm not. You know my mother's car isn't working at the moment, so on Saturday morning, I (1) am going to drive her to the hospital to visit her brother.

Sally: \_\_\_\_\_ you (2) \_\_\_\_\_ the whole day there?

Ruth: No. In the afternoon, I (3) \_\_\_\_\_ those shoes I saw yesterday.

Sally: Oh good. They really suited you.

Ruth: Then in the evening, Jason and I (4) \_\_\_\_\_ dinner with his boss.

Sally: Are you looking forward to it?

Ruth: No, not really. His boss is really boring.

Sally: What about Sunday?

Ruth: Oh, on Sunday morning, I (5) \_\_\_\_\_ in bed until 11 o'clock and then I (6) \_\_\_\_\_ the newspaper and have breakfast.

Sally: And Jason?

Ruth: Poor thing. He (7) \_\_\_\_\_ really busy all day. He (8) \_\_\_\_\_ the car and then he (9) \_\_\_\_\_ in the garden.

Sally: But you (10) \_\_\_\_\_ him, aren't you?

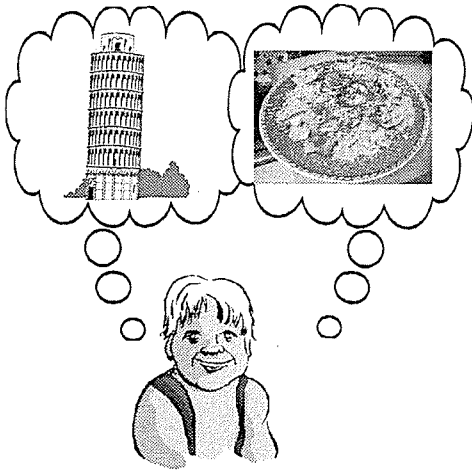
Ruth: On a Sunday? No, of course not! Sunday is my day off!

**WORKSHEETS**

**2** Liz, Mary, Jill, Hugh, Michael, Sally, Pete and Sarah are friends working in the same office. At the moment, they are speaking about their holiday plans for next summer.

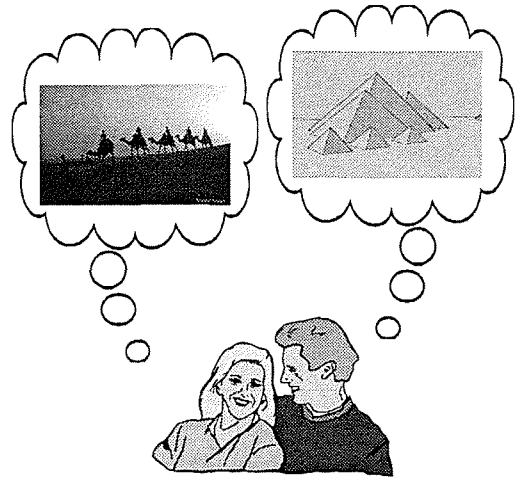
Look at the pictures and fill in the blanks with the words in the lists.

| Countries | Landmarks                   | Activities            |
|-----------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| India     | ✓ The Leaning Tower of Pisa | ✓ eat a lot of pasta  |
| ✓ Italy   | The Pyramids                | drink wine            |
| China     | The Eiffel Tower            | ride on a camel       |
| France    | The Taj Mahal               | see kangaroos         |
| Australia | The Great Wall              | eat with chopsticks   |
| Egypt     | The Sydney Opera House      | watch a snake charmer |



1. Next summer, I'm going to go to Italy. I'm going to see the Leaning Tower of Pisa and take a lot of pictures of it and other famous places. And also, I'm going to eat a lot of pasta with different sauces. I'm very fond of pasta, you know.

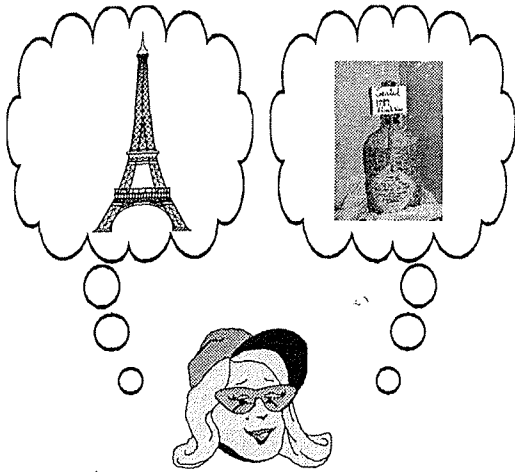
2. We're going to have two weeks in \_\_\_\_\_ next summer and we're going to cruise down the Nile and see \_\_\_\_\_. We can't wait! I'm definitely going to \_\_\_\_\_, but Hugh isn't. He's frightened of them!



3. I'm going to walk along \_\_\_\_\_ next summer because I'm going to spend my holiday in \_\_\_\_\_. I'm probably going to ride a bicycle, too. At meal times, I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_. I hope it's not hard!

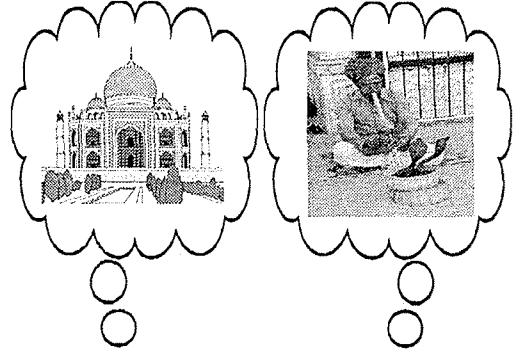


**WORKSHEETS**



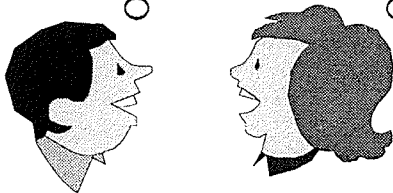
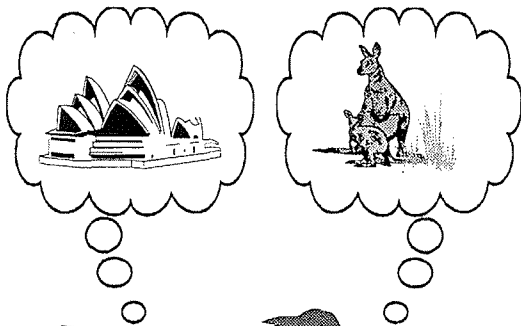
Mary

4. For my holiday next summer, I'm going to travel round \_\_\_\_\_ in my car. In Paris, I'm going to climb \_\_\_\_\_ and in the south, I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_: it's the best in the world!



Pete

5. I'm going to visit \_\_\_\_\_ next summer. It's going to be very interesting. I'm going to see \_\_\_\_\_ in Agra, the beautiful palace built for love. And I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ in the markets, but I'm not going to get too near!



6. Next summer, we're going to spend three weeks in \_\_\_\_\_. During the first week, we're going to visit famous places, especially \_\_\_\_\_. It has an unusual shape, you know, and we really wonder what it looks like inside. Then we're going to take a tour across the country, and of course, in the wild we're going to \_\_\_\_\_.

Now write about your holiday plans for next summer.

Next summer, I \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**WORKSHEETS**

**3**

The Wilsons are all going to be very busy tomorrow. Write sentences about each of them as in the example. Use *first, then, after that, finally* in suitable places.

- 1. 9.00 start work
- 10.00 attend a meeting
- 11.30 go to the bank to cash a cheque
- 12.15 visit his dentist for a filling in his tooth
- 5.30 stop work
- 5.45 meet his friend Mark at the club and play golf with him
- 8.30 go to the theatre with his wife

Tomorrow, Mr. Wilson is going to start work at nine o'clock. First he's going to attend a meeting at ten o'clock. Then, at half past eleven, he

---

---

---

---

---

---

- 2. 8.30 leave home a bit early and take her car to the garage for an overhaul
- 9.00 rush to work to attend the monthly board meeting
- 12.00 go to the garage to fetch her car
- 12.30 meet an old school friend for lunch
- 13.30. come back to the office and prepare the proposal for a government contract
- 16.30 have a meeting with the managers of related departments and inform them of the contract
- 17.30 leave work and go to her yoga session
- 19.00 go home and get ready to meet her husband at the club

Tomorrow, Mrs. Wilson

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

- 3. 9.00 start school
- 9.15 have a maths exam
- 12.30 find her friends and go for lunch
- 1.30 go to her afternoon lesson
- 4.30 finish school and go to the library to get some books
- 5.30 meet her boyfriend in a café
- 7.00 go to her aunt's for dinner and to stay the night
- 8.00 do her homework

Their daughter, Sally,

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

## WORKSHEETS

4

Emre and Özlem are in London for the first time. They are staying with their aunt Aysel and her husband, Robert. It is Friday morning. They are having breakfast and talking about their plans.

a) Complete the dialogue with "am/is/are + going to" and a verb from the box.

|       |       |      |
|-------|-------|------|
| need  | watch | ✓ do |
| visit | see   | get  |
| take  | show  | cook |

Emre: What are we (1) going to do today?

Robert: Well, here's my plan. Today we (2) \_\_\_\_\_ the Changing of the Guard ceremony at Buckingham Palace, and then we (3) \_\_\_\_\_ Big Ben and the Tower.

Aysel: And tomorrow?

Robert: Tomorrow morning I (4) \_\_\_\_\_ Emre the old ships in the docks.

Aysel: And Özlem and I can go shopping in Oxford Street.

Özlem: Oh good!

Robert: All right. Then we can meet at Piccadilly Circus in the afternoon. I've got a plan for Sunday, too. In the morning I (5) \_\_\_\_\_ you in the car to the market in Petticoat Lane, and in the afternoon we (6) \_\_\_\_\_ Westminster Abbey and have a good look round.

Emre: So today it's Buckingham Palace first, Uncle Robert. But how \_\_\_\_\_ we (7) \_\_\_\_\_ there?

Robert: We can take the bus to Buckingham Palace. From there we can walk to Big Ben, and then we can take the Underground to the Tower.

Aysel: A nice sightseeing programme. Oh, by the way, I (8) \_\_\_\_\_ a nice hot dinner tonight. Do you like fish, kids?

Özlem: Oh, yes. Very much.

Robert: Oh, we (9) \_\_\_\_\_ our umbrellas. Can you lend me yours for the children, dear?

Aysel: Oh, yes. Here you are, Robert. Good bye. Have a good time.

b) Ask and answer the questions according to the dialogue.

e.g. Who/take the children sightseeing/today  
Who is going to take the children sightseeing today?  
Uncle Robert.

1. What/they/do first/today

\_\_\_\_\_

2. How/they/get/there

\_\_\_\_\_

3. When/Uncle Robert/show Emre the ships in the docks

\_\_\_\_\_



## WORKSHEETS

4. What/Aunt Aysel and Özlem/do/on Saturday morning

---

---

5. Where/they/meet Uncle Robert and Emre/on Saturday afternoon

---

---

6. How/they/get to Petticoat Lane

---

---

7. When/they/visit Westminster Abbey

---

---

8. What/Aunt Aysel/cook for dinner/tonight

---

---

### Study the box.

#### How long / for + time phrase

— **How long** are you going to study English tonight?

— **For** an hour.

— **How long** are you going to stay on holiday?

— **For** two weeks.

**5**

Ask questions with “*how long*” as in the example and give short answers.

e.g. your father/stay in Izmir — a week

How long is your father going to stay in Izmir?

For a week.

1. the paintings/be on display — three weeks

---

2. the conference/last — two hours

---

3. your niece/stay with you — ten days

---

4. Mr. Williams/teach us/tomorrow — two hours

---

5. you/be/away — just a few days

---

6. you/work/on this project — at least two weeks

---

**Study the box.**

**Expressing Purpose**

Use *to + a verb, for + a noun, because + a sentence* when expressing your purpose

- Why is Mr. Fisher going to go to New York?
- He is going to go to New York *to attend a meeting.*  
*for a meeting.*  
*because he's going to attend a meeting.*
- Why are Sally and you going to meet at the school library tomorrow?
- We are going to meet there tomorrow *to borrow some books.*  
*for some books.*  
*because we want to borrow some books.*

**6 Ask questions with "why" and give short answers.**

e.g. your mother/go to hospital tomorrow (*have/an injection*)

Why is your mother going to go to hospital tomorrow?  
For an injection./To have an injection./Because she's going to have an injection.

1. John/stop off at the travel agent's tonight (*pick up/some brochures*)  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. you/take your passport to the American consulate (*get/a visa*)  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. they/take two weeks off work (*have/a rest*)  
\_\_\_\_\_

**7 Complete the sentences with "to" or "for".**

e.g. I'm going to buy a new dress for Sally's party.  
I'm going to buy a new dress to wear at Sally's party.

1. He's going to turn on the television \_\_\_\_\_ watch the football results.
2. A: Are you going to see the dentist \_\_\_\_\_ have a filling?  
B: No, just \_\_\_\_\_ a check-up.
3. We're going to go to the sports club this afternoon \_\_\_\_\_ a game of badminton.
4. She's going to go to the post office later \_\_\_\_\_ buy some stamps.
5. I'm going to put the kettle on \_\_\_\_\_ a cup of tea. Do you want one?

**8 Complete the sentences in Column A with the endings in Column B.**

**Column A**

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. I'm going to buy a hose today
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. He's going to get tomorrow's newspaper
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Mark and Lucy are going to enroll at the gym
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. She's going to go to the newsagent's
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. We're going to choose some furniture today
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. I'm going to open the window .
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. James and I are going to go to the art gallery
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. The teachers are going to visit the local theatre group

**Column B**

- a) for some fresh air.
- b) to water the plants in the garden.
- c) because they want to get some exercise.
- d) to buy something to read on the bus.
- e) for some ideas for the school play.
- f) because he wants to look at the job advertisements.
- g) because we want to buy some paintings for our house.
- h) to put in our living room.

# UNIT 2

## going to

Study the box.

### going to

You can use **going to** for predictions about the future if there is strong evidence in the present



There are dark clouds in the sky, and there is lightning  
It's **going to be stormy**.



Jill is coughing and sneezing, and she has got a sore throat  
I think she **is going to be ill**.

1

Look at the pictures and make predictions about what's going to happen. Use the expressions in the box.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>hit the man</li><li>✓ have a baby</li><li>fall into the hole</li><li>have a duel</li><li>injure his foot</li></ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>cause an explosion</li><li>electrocute himself</li><li>be too big for the window</li><li>eat dinner</li><li>hit the computer with an axe</li></ul> |
|--|--|



1. She is going to have a baby

2. He \_\_\_\_\_



3. He \_\_\_\_\_

4. The car \_\_\_\_\_

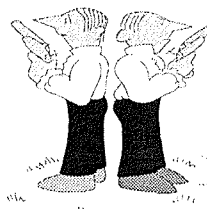


5. He \_\_\_\_\_





6. The frame \_\_\_\_\_



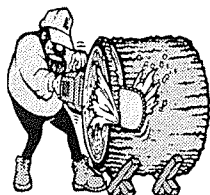
7. These men \_\_\_\_\_



8. He \_\_\_\_\_



9. He \_\_\_\_\_



10. He \_\_\_\_\_

**2** Ask questions using "going to" with the given words. Use the question words in the box.

- |          |       |          |           |      |
|----------|-------|----------|-----------|------|
| ✓ when   | whose | why      | what time | what |
| how much | who   | how long | where     | how  |

1. Sally/have her baby

A: When is Sally going to have her baby?

B: At the beginning of next month.

2. you/give your mother for her birthday

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: A necklace and some matching earrings.

3. Peter and Janet/be away

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: For a week, I think.

4. the council/build the new car park

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: Behind the shopping centre in King's Road.

5. car/we/take to the party

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: Not mine! I don't want to drive!

6. the meal/cost

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: Not more than £15 per person.

7. you/borrow the money for the trip from

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: My father's going to give it to me, I hope!

8. they/travel to the conference

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: By train.

9. Marcus/be late tomorrow

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: Because he's going to visit his uncle in hospital.

10. the film/start

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: At half past eight.

**3**

Read the passage and write T (True) or F (False) for the sentences below.

Jeremy and Mary are moving into a new house. They bought it about a month ago, but they can't move in yet because it is quite old and needs a lot of work. For example, the windows all rattle in the wind, so they're going to replace them. At the moment, there are five bedrooms upstairs, but two of them are very small, so Jeremy and Mary are going to knock down the wall between them and make them into one big room. This is going to be their bedroom. Their two children are going to have two of the other rooms and the final room is going to be for guests.

Downstairs, there is also a lot of work to do. In the living room, there was once a fireplace but the previous owners blocked it up and used an electric heater. Mary and Jeremy both love fires, so they're going to unblock it, clean the chimney, and use it again. They are also going to rebuild the kitchen.

In the garden, there is an old shed, but it's going to fall down, so they can't use it. Jeremy is going to pull it down and, in its place, put up a greenhouse. Mary's hobby is gardening, so she needs a greenhouse for her seedlings during the winter.

The work on the house is clearly going to take a long time, but the whole family is really looking forward to it because when it's finished, it's going to be beautiful.

- 1. Jeremy and Mary moved into their new house a month ago.
- 2. At the moment, Jeremy and Mary aren't living in their new house.
- 3. Jeremy and Mary's new house needs a lot of repairs.
- 4. Their children are going to share the same room.
- 5. After the repair work, there are going to be four bedrooms upstairs.
- 6. The previous owners of the house didn't use the fireplace.
- 7. Jeremy is going to repair the old shed in the garden for Mary.
- 8. In their new house, Jeremy and Mary are going to have a separate bedroom for their guests.
- 9. They aren't going to do any repair work downstairs.
- 10. Jeremy and Mary are going to use an electric heater in the winter.

**4**

Complete the sentences with *in, on, at, for* or *nothing* (—).

1. I talked to Pat on the phone yesterday. She's going to visit us \_\_\_\_\_ next Saturday.
2. Sorry, I'm short of time at the moment, but I can help you \_\_\_\_\_ the afternoon.
3. This tooth really hurts me. I'm going to see my dentist \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow afternoon.
4. My sister and her husband are going to a party tonight, so I'm going to look after their son \_\_\_\_\_ three hours.
5. We're going to take the children to the circus \_\_\_\_\_ Sunday. Do you want to come?
6. I didn't see her \_\_\_\_\_ last Tuesday, but I am going to see her \_\_\_\_\_ the weekend.
7. She isn't going to collect the photos \_\_\_\_\_ today because they aren't ready.
8. We're going to stay in a hotel \_\_\_\_\_ two weeks, and then we're going to go camping.
9. I can meet you \_\_\_\_\_ 6 o'clock tomorrow, but not before.
10. I'm usually at home \_\_\_\_\_ the morning, so you can call me then.
11. A: What are you doing \_\_\_\_\_ Monday evening?  
B: Oh, nothing interesting—just watching TV.
12. We're going to wait here \_\_\_\_\_ another ten minutes and then leave.

# UNIT 3

## The Simple Future

### Study the box.

### Making predictions and promises

Use **the simple future (will/won't)** when you are making predictions or promises about the future.

A: Don't come late for our date tomorrow.

B: Okay, I **will be** on time. (*promise*)

A: Keep this secret between you and me.

B: Okay, I **won't tell** anyone, I promise. (*promise*)

A: Which party **will win** the election? (*prediction*)

B: I have no idea.

A: I think the world **will be** a terrible place in the future.

B: I don't agree. It **won't be** so bad. (*prediction*)

**Will** is usually contracted to **'ll**.

I **'ll** help you with your maths homework, Jill.

She **'ll** pay me the money back tomorrow.

**Will not** is contracted to **won't**.

I **won't** be late again.

You broke your promise. She **won't** tell you any of her secrets again.

### 1 Read the e-mail below and then answer the questions.

Frank is an American boy. He lives in New York. This summer, he's going to spend three weeks in Istanbul with his pen pal, Sinan. He's just received an e-mail from Sinan, and at the moment, he's reading the message.

Dear Frank,

We'll meet you at the airport when you arrive on Friday. We'll wait for you at the door to the customs hall, and Dad will drive us to our house, on the Asian side. It's a bit far from the airport, but I'm sure you'll like the journey, especially crossing the Bosphorus. On Saturday, I'll take you to our club. I've spoken to Ali, our coach, and he says you can take part in all our activities. I'll introduce you to the other guys in our section, too. You'll like them. We always have a lot of fun together. Don't forget to bring your swimming things. There's a swimming competition in Kinaliada—one of the Princes' Islands—next week. All the youth clubs will be there. I know you're a good swimmer, and Ali says you can swim for our club. He'll tell you all about it on Saturday.

See you on Friday.

Yours, Sinan



1. When will Sinan and his father meet Frank?
2. Where will they meet him?
3. Where will they wait for him at the airport?
4. How will they get home from the airport?
5. What does Sinan say about the other guys in the club?
6. When is the swimming competition in Kinaliada?
7. Where do Sinan and his family live in Istanbul?
8. How long will Frank stay in Istanbul?
9. What will Ali tell Frank on Saturday?

2

Bert is a pessimistic person and sees the bad side of everything, but his friend, Sid, is an optimistic person and sees the good side.

Bert and Sid are talking about the future of the world, but their sentences are mixed up. Put the following sentences in order to make their conversation.

- a) Alright, there won't be any pollution, but also there won't be enough food because there'll be too many people.
- ✓b) What will happen to us? The world's in a terrible state.
- c) O.K., but there's air pollution, too. People burn coal and it gives off dirty smoke.
- d) Well, maybe we'll live for a long time, but look at all the pollution. There won't be any clean seas or rivers soon.
- ✓e) No, it isn't. Life's wonderful and we'll all live for years and years.
- f) Yes, of course I do, but we must start planning for it now.
- g) But all the buildings will have filters, so the air won't be smoky any more.
- h) No, no, no! Farm technology is improving all the time, and in the future, the population will grow more slowly.
- i) No, but in the future, we'll use solar, water, and wind power, so there'll be no problem—and no pollution!
- j) Nonsense! They were dirty, but now they're cleaning them up, and soon they'll be cleaner than before and full of fish.
- k) Well, the filters won't stop the fossil fuels, like coal and petrol, from running out, will they?
- l) But it's not just the population that will grow more slowly. What about the forests? We're cutting down trees all the time.
- m) So, do you think the future looks good?
- n) Not any more. Now we're planting new trees, so the forests will get bigger, not smaller.



Bert: (1) **b)** What will happen to us? The world's in a terrible state.

Sid: (2) **e)** No, it isn't. Life's wonderful and we'll all live for years and years.

Bert: (3) \_\_\_\_\_

Sid: (4) \_\_\_\_\_

Bert: (5) \_\_\_\_\_

Sid: (6) \_\_\_\_\_

Bert: (7) \_\_\_\_\_

Sid: (8) \_\_\_\_\_

Bert: (9) \_\_\_\_\_

Sid: (10) \_\_\_\_\_

Bert: (11) \_\_\_\_\_

Sid: (12) \_\_\_\_\_

Bert: (13) \_\_\_\_\_

Sid: (14) \_\_\_\_\_

3

A famous fortune teller, Roma Rose, is making predictions about the leaders of three political parties just before an election: **Mr. Fair** has little chance, **Mr. Charming** has more chance and **Mr. Cunning** has the most chance of winning the election.

Read her predictions and write the correct name above each picture.

1. Mr. \_\_\_\_\_



Will this man be our next Prime Minister? Perhaps he will, perhaps not. His speeches and policies will win a lot of support across the country, but there will be a scandal about someone in the party just before the election and this will lose him some votes.

2. Mr. \_\_\_\_\_

We'll see a lot more of this man in the future. Soon, he'll be everywhere. My powers of prediction show that one day, he'll be the most important man in the country. This year? Well, just wait and see!



3. Mr. \_\_\_\_\_



This man is honest and the public like him. But will they vote for him? I don't think so, because they don't think he'll be powerful enough. His party will win two or maybe three seats, but not more.

4

a) Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses using "will" or "won't".

"Here is the weather forecast for the country. This evening, there (1) will be (be) light showers in the south. In the north and east there (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (be) heavier rain and thick clouds. The west (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (have) any rain and it (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (be) clear. Tomorrow, it (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (rain) across the country in the morning, but this rain (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) in the afternoon in southern areas. Winds (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (be) strong, and it (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (snow) heavily in mountain areas, but snow (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (fall) anywhere else.

At the weekend, the sun (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (come) out in the south and we (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (see) any clouds there. But the rest of the country (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (have) more bad weather, and rain and snow (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (continue) to fall. Temperatures (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (be) generally low."

b) Complete the sentences according to the weather forecast above using the words in the box.

good      won't      west      rainy      sunny  
heavier      rain      south      heavy      will

1. It won't be \_\_\_\_\_ in the west this evening.
2. Tomorrow morning, there will be \_\_\_\_\_ across the whole country.
3. The rain in the north and east this evening will be \_\_\_\_\_ than in the south.
4. Every region in the country will have rain this evening, except the \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Tomorrow in the afternoon, it won't rain in the \_\_\_\_\_.
6. There will be \_\_\_\_\_ snow in mountain areas tomorrow.
7. Only the south will have \_\_\_\_\_ weather at the weekend.
8. The south will be \_\_\_\_\_ at the weekend.
9. There \_\_\_\_\_ be any clouds in the south at the weekend.
10. The whole country \_\_\_\_\_ have low temperatures in general.





**Study the box.**

**Will: expressing willingness**

Use **the simple future** when you decide to do something at the time of speaking.

(at the supermarket)

Mrs. Wilson: Oh, dear! I left my purse at home.  
Mrs. Smith: Don't worry. I'll **lend** you some money.

Daughter: Dad, my Walkman is broken.  
Father: Okay, I'll **fix** it for you.

**6** Complete the second speaker's part with the expressions in the box.

- |  |                       |
|--|-----------------------|
| a) record it for him                       | e) carry them for you |
| b) have roast chicken and fresh vegetables | f) call her later     |
| c) type it up immediately                  | g) go and get some ✓  |
| d) show you some pictures for some ideas   | h) fill up the tank   |

1. Patsy: Oh, dear! We haven't got any milk left, and I need some for the pudding.  
Mark: Okay. I'll go and get some.
2. Waiter: Is Madam ready to order?  
Customer: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_, please.
3. Wife: I don't think there's much petrol in the car.  
Husband: You're right. \_\_\_\_\_ at the next filling-station we come to.
4. Mother: These bags are really heavy.  
Son: Don't worry. \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Boss: I urgently need this report for this afternoon's meeting.  
Secretary: Right. \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Jane: Marsha's on the phone for you.  
Dave: I'm having a shower. Tell her \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Paul: It's a shame Dad isn't here. He loves nature programmes like this one.  
Jack: Well, \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Customer: I want to change my hairstyle, but I can't decide how.  
Hairdresser: No problem. \_\_\_\_\_.

**7** What do you say in these situations? Match the sentences in Column A with the responses in Column B.

Column A

- d 1. Let's make a salad for dinner.
- 2. I've got a temperature.
- 3. There's something wrong with the engine.
- 4. I don't know anybody at this party.
- 5. The roads are very busy at the weekend.
- 6. It's a bit cold in here, isn't it?
- 7. I don't know the way to the headquarters of that company.
- 8. It's raining—don't get wet.
- 9. I have to prepare an assignment for my literature teacher, but she doesn't want it handwritten.
- 10. I need some stamps for these letters.

Column B

- a) Ask Dad. I'm sure he'll direct you.
- b) Don't worry. I'll drive carefully.
- c) Okay. I'll put on my mackintosh.
- ✓ d) Fine. I'll go and get a lettuce and some tomatoes.
- e) Leave your car here and I'll take it to the garage later.
- f) Don't worry. I'll introduce you to the other guests.
- g) Go to bed and I'll bring you some hot lemon juice.
- h) Okay. I'll shut the window.
- i) Well, I'll go to the post office and get some for you.
- j) Don't worry. I'll type it for you on the computer.

**8** Complete the sentences with "will" and a verb from the box.

|       |      |            |        |
|-------|------|------------|--------|
| go    | take | look after | check  |
| drink | wear | reserve    | ✓ make |

- 1. *Daughter:* I want to wear a new dress at Sally's party, but we can't afford to buy one.  
*Mother:* Don't worry. I'll make a new dress for you.
- 2. *Mrs. Jones:* I have to go out, but I can't leave the children at home alone.  
*Mrs. Stone:* Bring them round to mine and I \_\_\_\_\_ them for you.
- 3. *Mr. Collins:* It says in the paper that the bus drivers are going to be on strike tomorrow.  
*Mrs. Collins:* No problem. I \_\_\_\_\_ to my meeting by train, then.
- 4. *Sheila:* That concert is going to be very popular.  
*Paula:* You're right. I \_\_\_\_\_ the tickets today.
- 5. *Mark:* Oh dear, there isn't any milk.  
*Joan:* It doesn't matter. I \_\_\_\_\_ my coffee black.
- 6. *Janet:* I'm worried about my composition. I think it's full of mistakes.  
*Luke:* Well, give it to me and I \_\_\_\_\_ it for you.
- 7. *Mother:* Your blue shirt is in the wash.  
*Son:* Alright. I \_\_\_\_\_ my green one then.
- 8. *Tony:* The motorway is usually very busy at this time of day.  
*Steve:* Well, in that case, we \_\_\_\_\_ the country road.

# UNIT 4

## “going to” or “will”

Study the box.

a) For predictions: **going to** or **will**

Use **going to** to make predictions about future events with present evidence. But if you make predictions without much evidence, use **will**.

Oh, that man over there is blind, and there's a big hole in front of him. He **is going to fall** into the hole.

Our team is going to play against Juventus tomorrow, and I think we **'ll lose** the match.

b) To express prior plans: only **going to**

I met Jim yesterday and told him about the picnic. He **'s going to join** us.

c) To express willingness and instant decisions: only **will**

A: I can't find my dictionary.  
B: Never mind. **I'll lend** you mine.

**NOTE:** Use **will** to express willingness, but if you are talking about the same thing for the second time, use **going to**.

Daughter: Dad, I can't do my maths homework.  
Father: Okay. **I'll help** you after dinner.

(Later, mother to father)

Mother: Jane is having a little difficulty doing her maths homework.  
Father: I know. **I'm going to** help her after dinner.

**1**

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses: *going to* or *will*.

1. A: Why don't you borrow Henry's encyclopedia for your term paper?  
B: I talked to him yesterday. He (*bring*) \_\_\_\_\_ it to class tomorrow.
2. Here's the guest list for our party. You can see that we (*not, invite*) \_\_\_\_\_ anyone from our workplaces.
3. A: Do you think we (*have*) \_\_\_\_\_ good weather for our holiday next month?  
B: I hope so, but who knows?
4. Oh, hello Jackie. I didn't know you were here, too. Mum (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ pleased to see you.
5. Look out! We (*crash*) \_\_\_\_\_!
6. A: Oh dear! I forgot to lock the car door.  
B: Don't worry. I (*run*) \_\_\_\_\_ back and do it.
7. A: I can't see what I'm doing because it's too dark in here.  
B: I (*turn*) \_\_\_\_\_ on the light, then.
8. That fence (*blow*) \_\_\_\_\_ down in the wind soon. We told Dad to fix it weeks ago, but he keeps forgetting.
9. We (*travel*) \_\_\_\_\_ by train to the resort. We bought the tickets three days ago.
10. A: Look! There's blue ink all over my favourite blouse.  
B: Well, I (*wash*) \_\_\_\_\_ it now and it (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_ dry by this evening.
11. Stop trying the engine over and over again! It's clear that the car (*not, start*) \_\_\_\_\_, so let's call a mechanic.
12. A: Are you driving all the way without stopping?  
B: No, we discussed this last week. We (*break*) \_\_\_\_\_ the journey with an overnight stop at a hotel.
13. A: Doctor, is he seriously ill?  
B: I can't say without examining him, but my guess is that he (*not, be*) \_\_\_\_\_ ill for very long.
14. A: Dad, the door handle just came off in my hand.  
B: Right. I (*fetch*) \_\_\_\_\_ my tool kit.
15. A: Fiona, you look very pale. Are you alright?  
B: No, I think I (*faint*) \_\_\_\_\_.

**2 The World's Petrol Crisis**

**A. Read the passage below and then choose the correct answer according to the passage.**

The world's petroleum supply will not last forever, but the big question is this: When will the petrol **actually** begin to finish? Some scientists think that this will happen between the years 2010 and 2020, and some think it will happen a few years later. But one thing seems certain: the petrol supply is going to start finishing soon. Because of higher petrol prices these days, a lot of people think that we need to start worrying about this problem now. More people are coming into the world every day, and so the world is using more petrol every day. Because of this, the end of the petrol supply will create a lot of serious problems for the world: economic problems, political problems, and social problems.

What can we do about these **potential** problems today? Here is one possibility: we will start to use other **alternatives**, different from petrol. The best alternatives are renewable energy **sources**; in other words, we can always use them and they do not finish. One example of this is electricity, and another example is solar power. For instance, in the case of an electric car, there will be battery-charging stations in place of petrol stations; in the case of a solar-powered car, the car will **absorb** energy directly from the sun. But there are possible problems with these kinds of cars. For example, battery-charging stations will **rely** on large power stations for their electricity, and these days, petrol **provides** the power for most power stations; this will need to change. As for solar-powered cars, nighttime driving will create problems, and cloudy or rainy days will, too.

But we can solve these problems, and in fact, many scientists are working on electric and solar-power technology right now. Car makers are not happy about this fact, because their business depends on petrol-powered cars. But in the end, their business will need to change, because petrol is not going to be on our planet forever.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>1. The supply of petroleum in the world .....</p> <p>A) is creating a high population<br/>B) will finish ten years from now<br/>C) is going down every day<br/>D) will drop in price soon</p> <p>2. The passage mentions ..... kinds of alternative energy.</p> <p>A) three                      B) two<br/>C) four                        D) five</p> | <p>3. Power stations get their energy mostly from .....</p> <p>A) petrol<br/>B) electricity<br/>C) solar power<br/>D) battery-charging stations</p> <p>4. Car companies .....</p> <p>A) do not believe the scientists' words<br/>B) are beginning to change their businesses<br/>C) are studying electric and solar-power technology<br/>D) do not want electric or solar-powered cars</p> |
|---|--|

**B. Try to guess the meaning of the words in bold type from the passage without using a dictionary.**

- |                        |               |                |             |                |
|------------------------|---------------|----------------|-------------|----------------|
| 1. <b>actually</b>     | A) especially | B) really      | C) directly | D) typically   |
| 2. <b>potential</b>    | A) possible   | B) responsible | C) able     | D) respectable |
| 3. <b>alternatives</b> | A) choices    | B) effects     | C) areas    | D) chances     |
| 4. <b>sources</b>      | A) costs      | B) vehicles    | C) supplies | D) symbols     |
| 5. <b>absorb</b>       | A) put        | B) take        | C) look     | D) drop        |
| 6. <b>rely</b>         | A) decide     | B) design      | C) describe | D) depend      |
| 7. <b>provides</b>     | A) gives      | B) calls       | C) rests    | D) grows       |

**C. What do you think? Discuss the following questions in groups.**

- Do you think that the world's petroleum supply will finish in your lifetime?
- How do you and your society use petroleum, oil, and natural gas? Think of as many ways as you can.
- Do you think that people use their cars more often than they need to use them?
- Do you think that people can become independent of petroleum-type fuels? Why or why not?
- In your opinion, which energy source is the best? Why?

**3** Ask questions about the words in bold type.

e.g. **All of my classmates** are going to come to my party.  
Who is going to come to your party?

1. I'm going to post this letter **tomorrow**.

---

2. The tickets won't be **expensive**.

---

3. I think **about ten** people are going to want tickets.

---

4. I'll answer the phone.

---

5. I expect the box will weigh **about five kilos**.

---

6. I'm going to put the vase **on the living room table**.

---

7. He'll get to work **by bus or taxi** tomorrow.

---

8. John is going to give those flowers to **Rita**.

---

9. He isn't going to join us next week **because he doesn't want to**.

---

10. He'll wear **the red** tie today.

---

11. **Kenny's** parents are going to supervise the school dance.

---

12. The play will finish **at about half past ten**.

---

13. We're going to have **fish** for dinner this evening.

---

14. She's going to **go climbing** at the weekend.

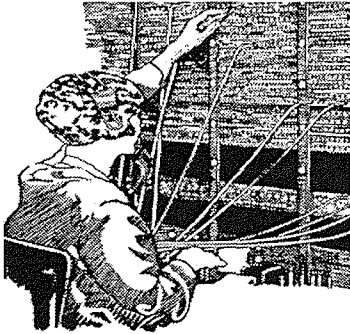
---

15. Mum will be angry with you **because you didn't pick up her dry-cleaning**.

---

**4** Mandy is on her first day as a telephone operator. She's having problems connecting the calls. Can you help her put the right pairs of speakers together?

- |               |             |   |
|---------------|-------------|---|
| <u>      </u> | <i>Jill</i> | <i>Terry:</i> My flight's arriving at 12.35 on Saturday.          |
| <u>      </u> |             | <i>Tom:</i> Aunt Mabel's coming to tea tomorrow.                  |
| <u>      </u> |             | <i>Sally:</i> I'm going to give a party on Saturday.              |
| <u>      </u> |             | <i>Jack:</i> Dad's going to buy a new car next week.              |
| <u>      </u> |             | <i>Tim:</i> Beşiktaş is playing Galatasaray on Sunday.            |
| <u>      </u> |             | <i>Harry:</i> The repairmen are delivering the TV this afternoon. |
| <u>      </u> |             | <i>Pam:</i> We're going to spend our holidays in Wales this year. |
| <u>      </u> |             | <i>Helen:</i> I'm going to babysit for our neighbours tonight.    |



- Jim:* I'll try to get some tickets for the match.  
*Kelly:* Are they? I'll stay at home and wait for them today, then.  
*Amy:* Oh, you'll like it there—it's a beautiful country.  
*Bob:* Fantastic! I'll bring some music CDs.  
*Mary:* Oh, great! Perhaps he'll take us to the seaside in it.  
 *Jill:* Okay, we'll meet you at the airport.  
*Ted:* Well, I hope the baby won't cry all evening.  
*Sue:* Oh no! I hope she won't stay too long.

**5** Choose the odd word out, and explain why it is different.

- |           |         |        |        |
|-----------|---------|--------|--------|
| 1. better | good    | worse  | harder |
| 2. ham    | meat    | cheese | milk   |
| 3. plane  | lorry   | car    | van    |
| 4. pretty | nice    | badly  | ugly   |
| 5. banana | cabbage | pear   | peach  |
| 6. cut    | brought | put    | walked |

1. Among the four words, **good** is different because it's the simple form of an adjective, but the other three are the comparative forms.

2. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_



# UNIT 5

## Revision of Tenses

1

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs: *simple present, present continuous, simple past, simple future (will) or going to*.

- Three months ago, the council (*start*) \_\_\_\_\_ to build a new leisure centre in our town.
- Sorry, but you can't speak to her at the moment because she (*sleep*) \_\_\_\_\_.
- The sun (*come*) \_\_\_\_\_ out in a minute. Look! You can see it behind those clouds.
- A: I'm tired. I (*not, want*) \_\_\_\_\_ to cook this evening.  
B: Okay. I (*telephone*) \_\_\_\_\_ for some takeaway pizzas.
- I (*get*) \_\_\_\_\_ a letter from Sarah yesterday. She (*visit*) \_\_\_\_\_ us at the beginning of next month.
- Usually, I (*not, take*) \_\_\_\_\_ sugar in tea, but I'd like some now because this tea is very strong.
- A: Which team (*win*) \_\_\_\_\_ the championship this year?  
B: Who knows? It's only the beginning of the season.
- A: Do you think my mother (*like*) \_\_\_\_\_ this bracelet? I'm giving it to her for her birthday tomorrow.  
B: Oh yes! She (*love*) \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- Our school basketball team (*play*) \_\_\_\_\_ very well at the moment; certainly better than last term, when they (*lose*) \_\_\_\_\_ all their matches.
- I guess that Aunt Pat (*stay*) \_\_\_\_\_ with us for only one night next week. I'm not sure, but she (*not, usually, enjoy*) \_\_\_\_\_ being away from home for very long.
- I (*post*) \_\_\_\_\_ the letter yesterday morning, so I expect you (*receive*) \_\_\_\_\_ it tomorrow.
- A: What's that noise?  
B: Dad (*use*) \_\_\_\_\_ his electric drill in the garage.
- I (*not, have*) \_\_\_\_\_ time to take those library books back last week, so I (*take*) \_\_\_\_\_ them now.
- Jake never (*do*) \_\_\_\_\_ very well in exams because he always (*get*) \_\_\_\_\_ very nervous just before them.
- A: Oh, no! Look at the mess in here!  
B: Don't worry. I (*clean*) \_\_\_\_\_ it up.

**2** a) Complete the passage with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

- |       |      |        |       |        |
|-------|------|--------|-------|--------|
| leave | fly  | ask    | think | love   |
| move  | work | ✓ go   | give  | make   |
| take  | pay  | forget | earn  | get on |

Sarah is a fourteen-year-old school girl and at the moment she is deep in thought. You see, usually, Sarah and her family (1) go to a small cottage on the coast for their holidays. But two years ago, her parents (2) \_\_\_\_\_ her and her brother to Spain for two weeks and she (3) \_\_\_\_\_ it. For many months after the holiday, she (4) \_\_\_\_\_ about it, but then slowly she (5) \_\_\_\_\_ about it. But next week, her brother, Tony, (6) \_\_\_\_\_ home to start work in a hotel in the south of Spain, so now Sarah can't stop thinking about the country again. She isn't jealous of her brother, but she (7) \_\_\_\_\_ plans for the future.

Tony (8) \_\_\_\_\_ as a waiter in the hotel's restaurant for two months and then he (9) \_\_\_\_\_ to the kitchen to train to be a chef. Sarah thinks that she (10) \_\_\_\_\_ a plane and (11) \_\_\_\_\_ out to see him every weekend. But right now, she hasn't got any money, so tomorrow, she (12) \_\_\_\_\_ her father to give her some chores round the house. She thinks he (13) \_\_\_\_\_ her for doing the work, and perhaps, he (14) \_\_\_\_\_ her some extra money, too.

Unfortunately, Sarah is terribly lazy, so there's little chance that she (15) \_\_\_\_\_ any money at all!

**b) Ask and answer the questions according to the passage. Pay attention to the verb form.**

1. Where/Sarah and her family/usually spend their holidays

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Where/they/spend their holiday/two years ago

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

3. How long/they/stay in Spain/then

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Sarah/like the holiday/in Spain/two years ago

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Why/Tony/leave home/next week

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

6. What/Tony/do/in the hotel

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

7. Sarah/be/jealous of her brother

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

8. Where/Tony/work/after two months in the hotel's restaurant

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

9. Why/Tony/work/in the hotel's kitchen

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

10. Sarah/have got enough money/to go to Spain every weekend

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

11. What/she/do/to earn money

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

12. there/be/much chance/that/she/earn any money

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**3** Complete the sentences with *yesterday, last, tomorrow, next, every day* and *every*.

1. She went to the dentist \_\_\_\_\_ and had two fillings.
2. A: Did you see that nature programme on TV \_\_\_\_\_ night?  
B: No, but I recorded it, so I'll watch it \_\_\_\_\_ or at the weekend.
3. \_\_\_\_\_, Sam takes his dog for a walk before going to school.
4. We went skiing for the first time \_\_\_\_\_ year and we really enjoyed it, so we're going again \_\_\_\_\_ February.
5. A: Does she go to bed early \_\_\_\_\_ night?  
B: Yes, usually.
6. Our class is going on a trip to a castle \_\_\_\_\_ week.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ time he sees a spider, he tries to catch it.
8. A: Why don't we go bowling \_\_\_\_\_ afternoon?  
B: No, sorry I can't. It's my cousin's birthday \_\_\_\_\_.
9. A: My mother cooks carrots \_\_\_\_\_!  
B: Oh no! How awful!
10. I was an hour late to work \_\_\_\_\_ morning, so my boss was really angry with me.
11. He usually goes to the gym \_\_\_\_\_, but \_\_\_\_\_ week, he didn't go even once.
12. A: Are you going to go to that meeting \_\_\_\_\_ afternoon?  
B: Yes, unfortunately I have to.
13. You must take these tablets \_\_\_\_\_ morning and evening for a week.
14. A: I didn't notice Janice at the conference party \_\_\_\_\_ night.  
B: No, she left the conference \_\_\_\_\_ afternoon and went home.
15. A: Will you be at home \_\_\_\_\_ night?  
B: Yes. Why don't you come round for dinner?

**4** Ask questions with the given words and a question word from the box. Pay attention to the verb form.

|            |           |          |       |
|------------|-----------|----------|-------|
| ✓ How long | Where     | Who      | When  |
| Whose      | How       | How much | How   |
| Who        | What      | Where    | What  |
| How many   | What time | Why      | Which |

e.g. you/study/at the library/tomorrow

A: How long are you going to study at the library tomorrow?  
 B: For two hours.

1. he/do/last Saturday

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: He stayed at home.

2. orange juice/there/in the fridge/be/at the moment

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: Just one carton.

3. they/arrive/tomorrow

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: I'm not sure. About 2 o'clock, I think.

4. they/hold/their wedding reception next Saturday

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: At a hotel.

5. computer/you/use/right now

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: My brother's.

6. she/walk/out of the meeting

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: Because she was angry.

7. brothers/you/have

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: Two.

8. you/start/studying/English

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: About two years ago.

9. tall/your father/be

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: He's one metre seventy-eight.

10. she/travel/to the exhibition with/next week

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: The manager.

11. umbrella/you/buy

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: I'll get the red one, I think.

12. help/Mum/to prepare dinner/tonight

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: I am. I promised her yesterday.

13. he/find/the restaurant

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: He thought it was excellent.

14. you/be/tomorrow at 6 o'clock

A: \_\_\_\_\_


B: At my sister's.

15. she/cook/for the dinner party/next week

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: Fish for the main course. I don't know about the rest.

**Study the box.**



Use **how often** to ask about the frequency of actions.

— **How often** do you visit your grandparents?  
— *Once a week./Every Saturday.*


— **How often** do you watch horror films?  
— *Never. I hate them.*

— **How often** does your son go to the cinema?  
— *Very often./Every week./Twice a week.*

**5** Which answer goes *best* with which question? Discuss it with your partner.

1. How often do you brush your teeth?
  2. How often do you go on holiday?
  3. How often does your English teacher give you a quiz?
  4. How often do they normally hold presidential elections in Turkey?
  5. How often do we celebrate Republic Day?
  6. How often do you wash your hair?
- 
- a) Twice a year.
  - b) Once every two weeks.
  - c) Once every five years.
  - d) Twice a week.
  - e) Three times a day.
  - f) Every year.

Study the box.



### Question Tags

You can change a statement into a question by adding a **question tag** onto the end of it. You use this question type to check the facts.

— Excuse me. You are Mr Williams, **aren't you?**  
— Yes, I am./No, I'm not

Use a negative tag with a positive statement; a positive tag with a negative statement.

— You **are** a lawyer, **aren't** you?  
— Yes, I am./No, I'm not

— You **aren't** coming tomorrow, **are** you?  
— Yes, I am./No, I'm not.

Use a subject pronoun in the question tag.

— **Your mother** has got a car, hasn't **she?**  
— Yes, she has.

— **Mr. Brown** taught you yesterday, didn't **he?**  
— Yes, he did.

— **Your brother** can speak French, can't **he?**  
— No, he can't

— **The Browns** live near you, don't **they?**  
— Yes, they do

— **Your parents** don't work on Saturday, do **they?**  
— Yes, they do.

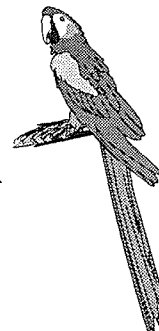
**6** Complete the sentences with the correct tag questions.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p><u>  </u> <b>b</b> 1. Ostriches can't fly, .</p> <p><u>  </u> 2. Frogs can live both on land and in water, . .</p> <p><u>  </u> 3. Elephants live until they're seventy years old, . .</p> <p><u>  </u> 4. Concorde flew at the speed of sound, ...</p> <p><u>  </u> 5. Cats don't like water, . .</p> <p><u>  </u> 6. Mount Everest is the highest mountain in the world, ...</p> <p><u>  </u> 7. In the future, there'll be cities under the sea, ...</p> <p><u>  </u> 8. Insects have got six legs, . .</p> <p><u>  </u> 9. Spiders aren't insects, ...</p> <p><u>  </u> 10. A piranha fish won't bite if it isn't hungry, . .</p> | <p>a) won't there?</p> <p>✓ b) can they?</p> <p>c) didn't it?</p> <p>d) can't they?</p> <p>e) isn't it?</p> <p>f) haven't they?</p> <p>g) are they?</p> <p>h) don't they?</p> <p>i) will it?</p> <p>j) do they?</p> |
|--|---|

**7** Molly is preparing an assignment on parrots. Yesterday, she went to the school library and collected some information about them. Now, she is checking the facts with her father.

Complete Molly's questions with tag questions and match them with her father's answers. Complete the dialogue using question tags.

- | Molly   | Her father   |
|---|--|
| <u>  </u> 1. There are lots of different types of parrots, <u>aren't there?</u> | a) They do. They can break open the toughest nuts with them.                       |
| <u>  </u> 2. Parrots have very strong beaks, _____?                             | b) No, some eat flowers, insects, or even meat.                                    |
| <u>  </u> 3. In captivity, parrots can recognize shapes and colours, _____?     | c) Sadly, yes, so we mustn't take any more from the wild as pets.                  |
| <u>  </u> 4. Parrots don't only eat fruit and nuts, _____?                      | d) They certainly can. Some live until they're eighty.                             |
| <u>  </u> 5. Cutting down tropical forests isn't good for parrots, _____?       | e) Yes, there are macaws, cockatoos, budgerigars and others, too.                  |
| <u>  </u> 6. Parrots can live for a long time, _____?                           | f) Yes, and in the wild, they copy each other.                                     |
| <u>  </u> 7. Parrots are excellent at copying people, _____?                    | g) No, it destroys their habitat and endangers them.                               |
| <u>  </u> 8. Some types of parrot will soon be extinct, _____?                  | h) That's because in the wild, they have to recognize different flowers and seeds. |



**8** Complete the dialogue using question tags.

- Veronica: Oh, hello! You're Catherine, (1) \_\_\_\_\_?
- Catherine: Yes. I am.
- Veronica: I'm Veronica. Don't you remember me?
- Catherine: Oh, yes. You were at Vincent's party on Saturday, (2) \_\_\_\_\_?
- Veronica: Yes, that's right. I think you only moved here a month ago, (3) \_\_\_\_\_?
- Catherine: Yes. My family came here because my father got a new job.
- Veronica: He's an engineer, (4) \_\_\_\_\_?
- Catherine: He is, actually. How did you know?
- Veronica: Oh, someone told me. I think it was Tony. You don't know him, (5) \_\_\_\_\_? His father works with yours.
- Catherine: Ah, I see. You aren't at the same school as me, (6) \_\_\_\_\_?
- Veronica: Your school is Highbrooke, (7) \_\_\_\_\_? No, unfortunately not.
- Catherine: That's a shame. I don't know many people yet.
- Veronica: Oh, you will soon. Anyway, I go to the local youth club. You are going to join it, (8) \_\_\_\_\_?
- Catherine: Oh yes. There will be a place for me, (9) \_\_\_\_\_?
- Veronica: Definitely. Anyone can join. And you can swim, (10) \_\_\_\_\_?
- Catherine: Yes, quite well actually.
- Veronica: So you can join the swimming club, too. You aren't a member yet, (11) \_\_\_\_\_?
- Catherine: No.
- Veronica: Well then, in no time, you'll know everyone, (12) \_\_\_\_\_?
- Catherine: Great!

**9** Complete the passage and dialogue using the verbs in parentheses with the most appropriate tense: *Present Simple, Past Simple, Present Continuous, Future Tense (will/going to)*. If there is no verb, use a question tag.

It is early October, and Ian and Anthony are on vacation in the south of Turkey. Yesterday, they (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (*spend*) the whole day in the city of Mersin. At about 1:00 in the afternoon, they (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (*walk*) around the city centre when they (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) hungry and (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (*decide*) to have something to eat, so they (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (*sit*) down in a small *tantuni* restaurant.

Ian: I (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) some *tantuni*. What (7) \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (*want*)?

Anthony: I (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (*not know*). I guess I (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) the same.

Waiter: What (10) \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*), gentlemen?

Anthony: Wow! Your English is very good!

Waiter: Thank you. I (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (*study*) it at university.

Ian: Which university (12) \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (*attend*)?

Waiter: Bilgi University in Istanbul.

Ian: Really? One of my friends (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (*work*) there. (14) \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (*know*) her? Terry Holt?

Waiter: Sorry, her name (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (*not sound*) familiar.

Anthony: Why (16) \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (*work*) here if you're a university graduate?

Waiter: Well, I (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (*not work*) here actually. I (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (*help*) my family for a while. This is my father's restaurant.

Anthony: I see.

Ian: So, what (19) \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) with yourself in the future, then?

Waiter: Well, I (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (*plan*) to continue with my studies one day.

Ian: So you (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) a master's degree, then?

Waiter: Yes, I (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (*hope*) so. Anyway, (23) \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (*enjoy*) Mersin so far?

Anthony: Yes. It's quite a nice city.

Waiter: How long (24) \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (*stay*)?

Ian: Actually, today is our last day here, and right now we (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (*try*) to decide where to go next.

Waiter: Well, (26) \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (*enjoy*) visiting archaeological sites?

Anthony: Very much so.

Waiter: In that case, you can visit Elaiussa Sebaste nearby. The Romans (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (*build*) it a long time ago, but of course, it's just ruins now. However, it (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) a wonderful cemetery with almost a hundred graves.

Ian: That (29) \_\_\_\_\_ (*seem*) quite interesting. Maybe we (30) \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) there, then.

Anthony: Let me ask you something else: there aren't any good beaches around here, (31) \_\_\_\_\_ there?

Waiter: Well, there's BP Motor Camp—it isn't great, but there are some ruins on a hill near it, and the ruins of the old Snake Castle out in the water.

Anthony: Great. Maybe we (32) \_\_\_\_\_ (*visit*) there this afternoon, and tomorrow morning we (33) \_\_\_\_\_ (*start*) for Elaiussa Sebaste.

Waiter: The Mersin International Music Festival is in town, too. You can see a concert there this evening, perhaps.

Anthony: Great idea! Why don't you come with us?

Waiter: Sorry, but I (34) \_\_\_\_\_ (*work*) until midnight tonight.

Anthony: Oh, that's too bad. Oh, well. Thanks for the recommendation, though.

Waiter: I'm happy to help. Umm ... (35) you \_\_\_\_\_ (*not want*) to eat anything, (36) \_\_\_\_\_ you?

Ian: Oh, yes, this is a restaurant, (37) \_\_\_\_\_ it? Two *tantunis* and two *ayrans*, please.

Waiter: Coming right up. By the way—I (38) \_\_\_\_\_ (*not tell*) you my name, \_\_\_\_\_ I?

Anthony: No, and sorry—we forgot to ask!

Waiter: It's alright. My name is Ersin. Ersin from Mersin.



10

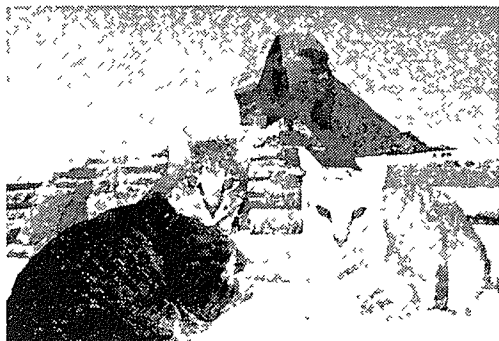
In the following short dialogues, add a tag question onto the end of the first person's statement. Then, choose the appropriate response from the list.

1. *Jess:* Gizem doesn't listen to folk music, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Sedef:* \_\_\_\_\_
2. *Aslıhan:* Mert's moving house this weekend, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Evren:* \_\_\_\_\_
3. *Eda:* You weren't at Canan's birthday party in Taksim last weekend, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Ozan:* \_\_\_\_\_
4. *Kerry:* You didn't put the garbage outside this morning, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Don:* \_\_\_\_\_
5. *Özlem:* Muzaffer won't be able to wake up early tomorrow morning, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Cem:* \_\_\_\_\_
6. *Özden:* You don't enjoy Turkish-style yoghurt very much, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Kelly:* \_\_\_\_\_
7. *Troy:* You're going to come to Roger's funeral, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Michael:* \_\_\_\_\_
8. *Tom:* You didn't understand Craig's accent very well, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Chuck:* \_\_\_\_\_
9. *Bilge:* Your sister and her husband were best friends in high school, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Biray:* \_\_\_\_\_
10. *Raia:* Jon doesn't really want to study forestry at school, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Aaron:* \_\_\_\_\_
11. *Ed:* Terry wasn't at all happy about the changes to the plan, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Kate:* \_\_\_\_\_
12. *Norma:* Joanie and Chuck have two sets of twin children, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Ron:* \_\_\_\_\_
13. *Nick:* Lisa had a car accident a couple of weeks ago, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Peter:* \_\_\_\_\_
14. *Steve:* Roger was your godfather, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Michael:* \_\_\_\_\_
15. *Nuran:* You'll help me carry this suitcase up the stairs, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Nilay:* \_\_\_\_\_
16. *Steve:* Your brother lives on the same street as your parents, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Gerald:* \_\_\_\_\_
17. *Gül:* Arzu's not planning to stop smoking yet, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Murat:* \_\_\_\_\_
18. *Kaan:* You gave Esra a phone call last night, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Gülsün:* \_\_\_\_\_
19. *Ayşegül:* You're not watching the news right now, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Fatma:* \_\_\_\_\_
20. *Frank:* You won't have any time to have a talk with me today, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Hugh:* \_\_\_\_\_

- a) Not at all! I couldn't understand even a single word!
- b) I'm not sure. What time will it be?
- c) Actually, they have three! I don't know how they manage!
- d) Not at all! It's just too creamy, salty, and fatty for me.
- e) Yes, and then their friendship blossomed into love.
- f) Well, I tried but she wasn't at home and her cellphone was off.
- g) Why? Is something important happening?
- h) Well, possibly, but only for a short time in the evening, I think.
- i) No—she generally prefers jazz or classical.
- j) No, I stayed away from it because I don't get along with her at all.
- k) Yes—he moved there last year because he wanted to be close to them.
- l) Not at all—in fact, he was furious about them.
- m) Yes, and he was also my favourite uncle. I'm really going to miss him.
- n) No—he decided to delay it because he can't find a big van.
- o) Yes, but she's alright now, no serious injuries.
- p) I'm sorry, but I can't—I hurt my back the other day, and I can't lift any heavy weights.
- q) Oh, I doubt it, because he stayed up very late tonight.
- r) No—she says that she still enjoys it too much to quit.
- s) No—it was Sandy's turn to take it out.
- t) Yes! He hopes to be a park ranger one day.

**11** a) Read the following passage and then write T (True) or F (False) for the following statements.

**The Cat**



The Egyptians brought cats into their homes and farms 3,500 years ago. The cats killed mice and rats and so protected the Egyptians' corn. Domestic cats then spread to other parts of the world. The cat was important in the old religions of Egypt, Scandinavia, and parts of Asia. The Egyptians had a cat-headed goddess named Bast. Later, in Egypt in the 13th century, the Mamluk sultan al-Zahir Baybars created a special garden just for cats. Ancient Egyptians' love for cats continues to inspire people even today. The names of the cats in the picture, for example, are

Osiris (on the left) and Seth (on the right). Both names come from ancient Egyptian mythology.

In Europe, the cat had a different history. During the Middle Ages, people hated cats, because they associated the animal with bad luck. Gradually, they managed to gain people's love. The famous poets Charles Baudelaire, T. S. Eliot, and W. B. Yeats all loved cats.

Domestic cats have large brains and great eyesight and hearing. The cat communicates through body language and sounds. It spends a long time cleaning, and for this, the cat uses its rough tongue. Many cats lick the fur of other cats or the hands of humans. They show friendliness this way. Female cats usually give birth to four kittens. The kittens are blind, deaf, and helpless for over a week. Domestic cats usually live for between 10 and 15 years, but one cat lived for 34 years. The popularity of the cat is still growing and cats are going to be with us for many years to come.

- \_\_\_ 1. Cats invaded Egyptian houses in 1500 BC.
- \_\_\_ 2. W. B. Yeats came from Egypt
- \_\_\_ 3. Cats give messages in two different ways.
- \_\_\_ 4. Cats can see very well.
- \_\_\_ 5. Europeans don't like cats.
- \_\_\_ 6. The goddess Bast was actually a cat.
- \_\_\_ 7. Newborn cats can't hear sounds.
- \_\_\_ 8. al-Zahir Baybars built a house for cats in an old garden.
- \_\_\_ 9. If a cat licks your hand, it means that it is being friendly
- \_\_\_ 10. Cats will still be with humans in the future.
- \_\_\_ 11. Europeans used to believe that cats brought bad luck.
- \_\_\_ 12. Charles Baudelaire is not as well-known as T. S. Eliot and W. B. Yeats.

b) Answer the following questions according to the passage.

- 1. How did cats help the Egyptians?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2. Who was Bast?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3. What did al-Zahir Baybars do for cats?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4. How long is the life of a cat on average?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5. What does the cat use its tongue for?  
\_\_\_\_\_

# REVISION TEST 1

## Units 1-5

1. Lev Tolstoy wrote the classic novel *War and Peace*, .....?
- A) did he                      B) wasn't he  
C) didn't he                  D) was he
2. This car has an old engine, so you ..... unleaded petrol for it.
- A) mustn't use                B) didn't use  
C) not using                  D) not use
3. Emily: I have a bad headache.  
Nikos: ..... you some aspirin from the medical cabinet.
- A) I'll get                      B) I get  
C) I got                         D) I'm going to get
4. The manager is very happy with Maria's work, so he ..... her a better position in the company.
- A) will give                    B) is going to give  
C) gives                         D) give
5. The sea water will be much warmer next month, .....?
- A) does it                      B) doesn't it  
C) will it                        D) won't it
6. We ..... on holiday to Bodrum once, but I ..... to go there again.
- A) will go/am not going to want  
B) go/am not wanting  
C) are going/didn't want  
D) went/don't want
7. I ..... in the encyclopaedia ..... some information on Sigmund Freud.
- A) will look/because  
B) am looking/to  
C) am going to look/for  
D) look/with
8. Tomorrow, Onur ..... to Turkey from Germany for the first time in his life.
- A) comes                      B) is coming  
C) must come                D) came
9. Angela: I don't have time to go to the library this morning.  
Melek: Don't worry. .... your travel books for you.
- A) I'll return                 B) I'm going to return  
C) I'm returning             D) I return
10. Serpil is very clever, so I think she ..... all of the questions correctly and win 500,000 YTL.
- A) must answer              B) answers  
C) will answer                D) is answering
11. Frank walked home from Kadıköy to Ümraniye last night, .....?
- A) did he                      B) wasn't he  
C) didn't he                  D) was he
12. Sometimes, Fiona uses her bike ..... her groceries.
- A) to carry                    B) carrying  
C) carry                        D) carries
13. The English writer Lawrence Durrell lived on Cyprus ..... three years.
- A) ago                         B) for  
C) once                        D) last
14. Cengiz is running on the snow. He ..... over.
- A) fell                         B) is falling  
C) falls                        D) is going to fall

15. There is a ferry from Istanbul across the Black Sea to Odessa ..... a week.

- A) every                      B) once  
C) with                        D) to

16. The longest snake in the world is the regal python, .....?

- A) doesn't it                B) isn't it  
C) is it                        D) does it

17. Gülşen is looking at the advertisements in the newspaper ..... she wants to buy a motorbike.

- A) with                        B) for  
C) to                            D) because

18. .... you ..... that Bülent writes poems about Istanbul in his free time?

- A) Do/believe  
B) Are/believing  
C) Are/going to believe  
D) Will/believe

19. Antonio reads the news on the Internet ..... morning before breakfast.

- A) once                        B) every  
C) with                        D) for

20. I'm ..... Murat my VCD of *Spider-Man 2* because I think he ..... it.

- A) lent/likes  
B) lending/is liking  
C) going to lend/will like  
D) lend/liked

21. Stella: ..... will the space shuttle be in outer space?

Burcu: For three days.

- A) How many                B) When  
C) What time                D) How long

22. People first entered the North American continent 16,000 years ..... .

- A) ago                        B) last  
C) once                        D) for

23. Funda says that she ..... that advertisement on TV for washing-up liquid.

- A) hates                        B) is hating  
C) was hating                D) will hate

24. Johnny Depp and Orlando Bloom star in the film *Pirates of the Caribbean*, .....?

- A) are they                    B) do they  
C) aren't they                D) don't they

25. The airplane ....., so we ..... our safety belts on.

- A) lands/will put  
B) is landing/must put  
C) is going to land/put  
D) landed/are putting

26. I looked in seven different clothes shops ..... Günter's birthday present.

- A) for                        B) to  
C) with                        D) because

27. Ali shaves at home ..... day, but ..... a month he has a shave at the barber's.

- A) every/once                B) once/last  
C) for/ago                    D) last/every

28. The Turkish word *kaybetmek* ..... "to lose" in English, .....?

- A) is meaning/isn't it  
B) means/doesn't it  
C) meant/was it  
D) will mean/will it

29. The telephone is ringing and my family is busy, so ..... it.
- A) I'm answering  
B) I'm going to answer  
C) I answer  
D) I'll answer
30. You ..... buy a good map and a good compass for your walking holiday in Ireland, or you'll get lost.
- A) do  
B) will  
C) are going to  
D) must
31. Mehmet: ..... are we going to be on the coach to Bingöl?  
Nilüfer: For twenty hours.
- A) When  
B) How many  
C) How long  
D) What time
32. I ..... this Australian man's questions, but he ..... my answers.
- A) am understanding/didn't like  
B) understand/doesn't like  
C) will understand/didn't like  
D) understood/isn't liking
33. Irene thinks ..... a thunderstorm later tonight, because today the weather ..... very hot.
- A) there is/is  
B) there'll be/was  
C) there is going to be/will be  
D) there was/is going to be
34. Zeynep is buying some peppers, tomatoes, mincemeat, and rice in the market. She ..... some dolmas.
- A) is going to make  
B) makes  
C) made  
D) is making
35. People in East Asia celebrate the Chinese New Year ..... year in January or February.
- A) last  
B) once  
C) every  
D) for
36. Şule won't finish her homework before tomorrow morning, .....?
- A) isn't she  
B) won't she  
C) is she  
D) will she
37. Pietro ..... to the football stadium ..... watch the match between Palermo and AC Milan tonight.
- A) will travel/for  
B) is travelling/to  
C) travelled/because  
D) travels/with
38. Erdem went into the Internet café ..... he wanted to send an e-mail to his cousin in Kuwait.
- A) because  
B) for  
C) to  
D) every
39. The ancient Egyptian civilization existed ..... 3,000 years.
- A) once  
B) for  
C) every  
D) last
40. Tülin ..... more beautifully than the other women, so she ..... the competition.
- A) sings/was winning  
B) is singing/wins  
C) sang/is going to win  
D) will sing/won

## TEST YOUR VOCABULARY 1

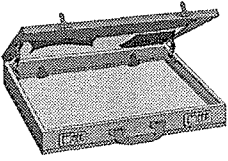
1. In AD 79, the volcano Vesuvius ..... the Italian city of Pompeii.  
A) flowed                      B) erupted  
C) passed                      D) destroyed
2. Raul and Francesca will ..... on a name for their child when it is born.  
A) decide                      B) consider  
C) speak                      D) choose
3. Mike Newman is ....., but he once drove a car at 232 km/h and broke a world record.  
A) brief                      B) blind  
C) rapid                      D) early
4. The professor will be ..... for the next few days, so come back in the middle of next week.  
A) closed                      B) intelligent  
C) busy                      D) strange
5. In China it is ..... to put a person's business card immediately into your bag or wallet.  
A) annoyed                      B) helpless  
C) impossible                      D) rude
6. The name of your sister is ....., but I don't think that I know her.  
A) powerful                      B) possible  
C) cautious                      D) familiar
7. Firat ..... his ticket to Bahrain two months before the day of the flight.  
A) imagined                      B) raised  
C) booked                      D) shopped
8. Derya ..... yesterday with her family at her uncle's house in Yalova.  
A) spent                      B) went  
C) crossed                      D) travelled
9. We went to the Hotel Vromiko because of Lennox's ....., but it was really horrible there.  
A) accommodation  
B) recommendation  
C) education  
D) revision
10. Shark skin is ....., so some people wear gloves when they touch it.  
A) tight                      B) rough  
C) nervous                      D) bitter
11. Calm down and be .....! Winona will be here soon.  
A) important                      B) excited  
C) shy                      D) patient
12. Çiçek is going to ..... a website on her hometown of Gaziantep for the Internet.  
A) deliver                      B) grow  
C) create                      D) discover
13. There is still no ..... on school uniforms between the students and the school administration.  
A) fashion                      B) agreement  
C) distance                      D) answer
14. Ömer ..... my VCD of *Shrek 2* last week, but I want it back for this weekend.  
A) borrowed                      B) sold  
C) filmed                      D) brought
15. Gareth ..... buys the groceries, but he won't today because he is ill in bed.  
A) probably                      B) nearly  
C) finally                      D) usually
16. Those plastic sandals won't be very ..... for our trekking holiday in the mountains.  
A) experienced                      B) broken  
C) careful                      D) suitable
17. Sevim is in her last year at university. She is going to ..... next summer.  
A) increase                      B) graduate  
C) please                      D) study

18. The mayor gave an interesting ..... to the question about the new houses next to the sea.
- A) response                      B) receipt  
C) reduction                      D) result
19. Peter Jackson became ..... worldwide with his three *Lord of the Rings* films.
- A) curious                          B) faithful  
C) famous                          D) large
20. The insects running around in my hair are ..... me.
- A) polluting                      B) racing  
C) bothering                      D) brushing
21. Beatrice's husband is in Norway, but they ..... every day through the Internet.
- A) communicate                B) skate  
C) search                          D) introduce
22. I'm going to ..... playing computer games next year.
- A) touch                          B) give  
C) leave                            D) quit
23. The students ..... very badly in Mr. Yilmaz's class, but they are good in Ms. Polat's.
- A) examine                        B) behave  
C) miss                              D) waste
24. It is ..... unlikely that Atlantis ever existed.
- A) highly                          B) weakly  
C) justly                            D) suddenly
25. The virus ..... very quickly to the other students in Sasha's college.
- A) escaped                         B) murdered  
C) collected                       D) spread
26. Real Betis ..... to beat Barcelona tomorrow, but Barcelona is playing very well this year.
- A) tries                            B) hopes  
C) matches                        D) hits
27. Pizza ..... like a good idea. I'll call and order one in a few minutes.
- A) tastes                          B) sounds  
C) licks                            D) hears
28. Strong winds ..... Japan from two different Mongol invasions.
- A) sailed                          B) blew  
C) protected                      D) attacked
29. Tell me the rest of the story on the phone tonight. I'm in a ..... at the moment because the train leaves in ten minutes.
- A) platform                       B) speed  
C) need                            D) hurry
30. The Spanish artist Francisco Goya lost his hearing and became ..... later in life.
- A) faint                            B) deaf  
C) soundless                      D) narrow
31. Professor Sonno ..... Rya for her excellent work on sleeping disorders.
- A) praised                         B) thought  
C) followed                       D) marked
32. Yvonne ..... Nicholas some money three weeks ago, but he isn't going to pay her back.
- A) loaned                         B) borrowed  
C) sold                              D) saved
33. The ..... way to greet people in Japan is with a bow.
- A) round                          B) appropriate  
C) possible                        D) various
34. I became very scared last night when two men ..... me in a dark alley.
- A) walked                        B) murdered  
C) approached                    D) decided
35. Henry and Catalina are going to have a long ..... . They aren't going to get married for the next four years.
- A) feeling                         B) wedding  
C) connection                    D) engagement

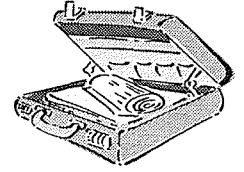
# UNIT 6

## Indefinite Pronouns

- 1 Complete the sentences with *something*, *anything*, *someone* and *anyone* using *is* or *isn't* where necessary.



1. There isn't anything in this briefcase. It's empty.



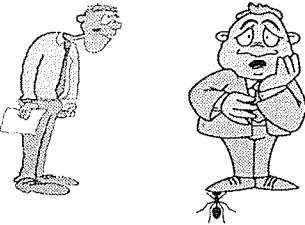
2. This briefcase isn't empty. There is something in it.



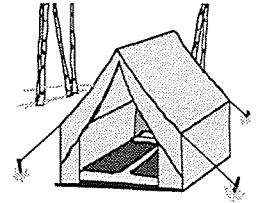
3. Look! There is a sailboat there, but there \_\_\_\_\_ on it.



4. Can you see the boat over there? I think there \_\_\_\_\_ on it, but I can't see who it is.



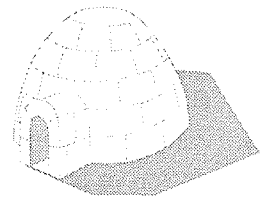
5. A: Oh, gosh! I stepped on \_\_\_\_\_.  
B: It's an ant, and I'm afraid you've injured it.



6. Look, there's a tent over there, but there \_\_\_\_\_ in it.



7. Look! There \_\_\_\_\_ at the end of the tunnel.



8. I can't see \_\_\_\_\_ outside the igloo. Perhaps there \_\_\_\_\_ inside.



9. A: He thinks he's pointing to \_\_\_\_\_ on the board, but I can't see \_\_\_\_\_. Can you?  
B: No, I can't, either. There \_\_\_\_\_ on the board.



10. A: I think this is a deserted island. There \_\_\_\_\_ on it. But there \_\_\_\_\_ under the tree.  
B: Yes, that's a chest full of treasure.



**2** Rewrite the sentences using “*nothing*” or “*no one*” instead of “*not anything*” and “*not anyone*”.

e.g. There wasn't anyone in the office yesterday.  
 There was no one in the office yesterday.


The drawer was empty. There wasn't anything in it.  
 The drawer was empty. There was nothing in it.

1. I left the party early because there wasn't anyone I knew there.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. There isn't anything I want to buy in this shop.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. We offered our help, but there wasn't anything left to do.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. There isn't anything interesting on at the cinema this week.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. We can't go inside yet. There isn't anyone there at the moment.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. He got angry with me today, but that isn't anything unusual.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. I walked out of the shop because there wasn't anyone working behind the counter.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. A: Who was at the door?  
 B: Oh, it wasn't anyone important.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**3** Complete the sentences with *something*, *anything*, *nothing*, *someone*, *anyone* or *no one*.

1. Can you have a look at my eye? I think there's \_\_\_\_\_ in it.
2. A: I'm bored. There's \_\_\_\_\_ on TV.  
 B: Well, read a book, then.
3. Jane and I were the only people at the swimming pool today. \_\_\_\_\_ else came.
4. A: You've got \_\_\_\_\_ in your hair.  
 B: Oh, it's probably paint.
5. A: \_\_\_\_\_ forgot to turn the lights off last night.  
 B: Not me! I left early.
6. A: Does \_\_\_\_\_ want to come with me to the cinema tonight?  
 B: Oh yes, I do.
7. A: I'm going to the shop. Do you want \_\_\_\_\_?  
 B: No, thanks.
8. Paul, there's \_\_\_\_\_ on the phone for you, but he won't tell me his name.
9. Please don't tell \_\_\_\_\_ about this. It's a secret.
10. Oh, dear! There's \_\_\_\_\_ in the fridge. Let's call for a pizza.
11. Don't put \_\_\_\_\_ coloured in the wash. I'm only doing the whites.
12. I expected the people at the head office to ask me a lot of questions, but \_\_\_\_\_ said a word to me.

**Study the box.**



### Indefinite Pronouns

**For people:** *someone, anyone, no one, everyone*  
 My grandmother is very old. She needs **someone** to help her with the housework.  
**Everyone** in our class came to my party except Jane, because she was ill.

**For things:** *something, anything, nothing, everything*  
 I'm in a hurry. I don't want to eat **anything** this morning.  
**Everything** is so expensive these days.

**For places:** *somewhere, anywhere, nowhere, everywhere*  
 I can't find my glasses **anywhere**. Can you help me look for them?  
 According to the weather forecast, there will be snow **everywhere** in the country tomorrow.

**4** Complete the sentences with suitable indefinite pronouns: *someone, anything, nowhere, etc.*

1. Young people in this town get very angry because there's \_\_\_\_\_ cheap for them to go at weekends.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ thought the play was wonderful, so they clapped and cheered for over ten minutes.
3. Our local supermarket sells \_\_\_\_\_, so I don't have to go to other shops.
4. We looked \_\_\_\_\_ in town for a place to stay, but all the hotels and hostels were full.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ sent me this postcard, but I don't know who, because I can't read the name at the bottom.
6. You must keep your jewellery \_\_\_\_\_ safer than in the drawer in your bedroom
7. I'm hungry. I didn't eat \_\_\_\_\_ for lunch because I was really busy
8. I didn't know \_\_\_\_\_ at the party, so I didn't enjoy it very much
9. Just leave it \_\_\_\_\_ in the bedroom and I'll put it all away later.
10. There wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ nice for us to stop and have a picnic, so we went to a restaurant instead.
11. She was very upset because \_\_\_\_\_ in her class remembered her birthday.
12. Quick! I can smell \_\_\_\_\_ burning in the kitchen.
13. The tickets for the match cost us \_\_\_\_\_. They were a present from my uncle.
14. A: Let's go \_\_\_\_\_ different this weekend!  
 B: Okay. Where do you suggest?
15. The children didn't tidy up after their game, so there were toys \_\_\_\_\_ when I went into their room.
16. A: I think \_\_\_\_\_ followed me here.  
 B: Really? Who?  
 A: I don't know.

Study the box.

Use **some-** in positive statements.  
 We are planning to go **somewhere** for the weekend.  
 He told me **something**, but I didn't hear what.

Use **any-** in negative statements and in questions.  
 Last year, we **didn't** go **anywhere** for our holidays.  
 Did you buy **anything** at the shops?

Use **no-** with a positive verb for a negative meaning.  
 Last year, we **went nowhere** for our holidays.  
 I **bought nothing** at the shops yesterday.

When offering or requesting something, use **some-** in questions.  
 — Would you like **something** to drink?  
 — A cup of coffee, please.

— Can I see **someone** in authority?  
 — Yes, of course.

— I don't want to stay at home. Can we go **somewhere** tonight?  
 — Well, where do you want to go?

**5** Complete the dialogues with the expressions in the box.

- |                                     |                              |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| a) nowhere to go                    | ✓ f) anything to wear        |
| b) anyone to talk to                | g) something to read         |
| c) someone to help you              | h) somewhere to park the car |
| d) anywhere to put these chairs     | i) nothing to eat            |
| e) no one to share her secrets with | j) something to eat          |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. A: I can't go to Alice's party. I haven't got <u>anything to wear.</u><br/>         B: Don't worry. You can borrow my blue dress.<br/>         A: Oh, thank you very much.</p> <p>2. A: I hate this town. It's so boring. There is _____<br/>         B: Yes, but at least we don't have pollution and noise.</p> <p>3. A: I'm bored.<br/>         B: Would you like _____?<br/>         A: Oh, yes please.<br/>         B: Well, there are some magazines on my study table.</p> <p>4. Jane doesn't trust people. She believes that she has _____</p> | <p>5. We have to go grocery shopping today. There's _____ at home.</p> <p>6. We didn't drive around for long because we found _____ really easily.</p> <p>7. A: I can't find _____<br/>         B: Well, leave them in the corridor then.</p> <p>8. A: Are you hungry? Would you like _____?<br/>         B: Oh, yes please. I'd love a sandwich.</p> <p>9. I get quite lonely now that my brother is away at university, because I haven't got _____ in the evenings.</p> <p>10. A: I'll get _____ with those heavy bags.<br/>         B: Thank you very much.</p> |
|--|---|

**6**

Complete the sentences with *some, any, no, something, anything, someone, everyone, nowhere, etc.*

*e.g.* A: Would you like some cake with your tea?

B: No, thanks. I don't want to eat anything sweet because I'm on a diet.

1. A: We're bored, Mum. We haven't got \_\_\_\_\_ to do.  
B: Well, Dad brought home \_\_\_\_\_ new videos last night. Why don't you watch one of them?
2. A: Let's go out \_\_\_\_\_ tonight.  
B: I can't. I haven't got \_\_\_\_\_ money.
3. A: I looked \_\_\_\_\_ in town for a new outfit, but I couldn't find one \_\_\_\_\_.  
B: Really? I saw \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful clothes in the shop next to the post office yesterday.
4. A: Are you ready to go? Have you got \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: Yes, I think so... No, just a minute. I want \_\_\_\_\_ to read on the journey. Have you got \_\_\_\_\_ magazines I can borrow?
5. A: Hello! This is a surprise. \_\_\_\_\_ told me you were coming.  
B: That's because I didn't tell \_\_\_\_\_!
6. A: Now, is \_\_\_\_\_ here?  
B: Almost. We're waiting for John, but \_\_\_\_\_ saw him getting off the bus about ten minutes ago, so I expect he's coming.
7. A: Oh dear. There's \_\_\_\_\_ sugar.  
B: Well, I'll go to the shop and get \_\_\_\_\_. Do you want \_\_\_\_\_ else?
8. A: When we were on holiday, there was \_\_\_\_\_ interesting to go at night, so we just stayed in the hotel every evening.  
B: That's often the problem with these resorts. There's \_\_\_\_\_ to do except sunbathe and swim.
9. A: I'm sorry but I'm busy. I've got \_\_\_\_\_ time to chat now.  
B: Oh, you've always got \_\_\_\_\_ to do when I want to talk to you.
10. A: Let's stay \_\_\_\_\_ more luxurious than the hotel we went to last year.  
B: It's a good idea, but there aren't \_\_\_\_\_ really luxurious hotels in that town.
11. A: I didn't know \_\_\_\_\_ at that party last night. It was an awful party!  
B: No, it wasn't. I met \_\_\_\_\_ very nice people there.
12. A: Oh no! It's raining and I've got \_\_\_\_\_ good shoes.  
B: Oh, stop complaining! You always say that you've got \_\_\_\_\_ to wear, when in fact your wardrobe is full of clothes.

**7** Complete the following dialogue using an appropriate indefinite pronoun: *anything, every one, somewhere, nothing, etc.* Some blanks can have more than one answer.

*Steph is going to go to an important social event, but she is unhappy with her clothing selection. She is telling her roommate Michelle about her problem.*

Steph: What am I going to do? There's an important party soon, and I have (1) \_\_\_\_\_ to wear!  
 Michelle: Of course you do! Look at all those nice dresses in your closet.  
 Steph: But can't you see? I haven't got (2) \_\_\_\_\_ nice enough for such an important event.  
 Michelle: Well, there's only one solution for that problem, then, isn't there?  
 Steph: What's that?  
 Michelle: Let's go out (3) \_\_\_\_\_ and buy (4) \_\_\_\_\_ new!

*Steph and Michelle are now at a nearby clothes shop, trying to find a dress for Steph.*

Steph: But how can I possibly choose from all these dresses? I absolutely love (5) \_\_\_\_\_ here!  
 Michelle: Well, let's see—except for me, there doesn't seem to be (6) \_\_\_\_\_ here to help you choose.  
 Steph: So help me!  
 Michelle: Alright, let's see—do you want (7) \_\_\_\_\_ fantastically elegant or tastefully simple?  
 Steph: (checks wallet) Umm ... definitely simple.  
 Michelle: Well, okay then. Now, let's have a look, shall we?

*Steph eventually buys a dress. Now, Steph and Michelle are back at home. The party is going to start in two hours.*

Steph: Oh! This dress looked so wonderful on me at the store, and now it looks so terrible! (8) \_\_\_\_\_ at the party is going to laugh at me.  
 Michelle: Oh, stop being so dramatic. You look absolutely gorgeous, and I'm sure that (9) \_\_\_\_\_ will laugh at you. In fact, maybe (10) \_\_\_\_\_ will even fall in love with you.  
 Steph: Oh, you can be so nice sometimes, but really, I don't think that (11) \_\_\_\_\_ can fall in love with me in this dress—I look like a dumpling!  
 Michelle: You do not! Don't be so silly! I didn't see (12) \_\_\_\_\_ at all in that store more flattering to you than this lovely dress.  
 Steph: Really? Do you think so?  
 Michelle: Absolutely!

*The party is over. Now, Steph is back at home, and she tells Michelle all about it.*

Michelle: So—how did it go?  
 Steph: Oh, it was rather boring at first—but then (13) \_\_\_\_\_ simply wonderful happened.  
 Michelle: What? What?  
 Steph: Well, first of all, let me say that I never saw (14) \_\_\_\_\_ so crowded before in my life. But (15) \_\_\_\_\_ talked about (16) \_\_\_\_\_ important—it was just stupid gossip, that's all. And (17) \_\_\_\_\_ smoked! (18) \_\_\_\_\_ in the building was filled with smoke. Because of that, I decided to go outside for some fresh air.  
 Michelle: Yes ... go on, go on!  
 Steph: Well, there was a balcony at the building, so I went out there. But (19) \_\_\_\_\_ was already there!  
 Michelle: Who? Who?  
 Steph: Well, actually—it was quite a handsome man! We started talking, and he said that I looked lovely in my dress ...  
 Michelle: You see, I told you so!  
 Steph: ... and then, he asked me to dinner on Saturday evening!  
 Michelle: Oh, wonderful! Where is he going to take you?  
 Steph: He's taking me (20) \_\_\_\_\_ very nice—Chez Billy, the fancy Cajun restaurant!  
 Michelle: Fantastic! I'm so happy for you!  
 Steph: The only problem is, I haven't got (21) \_\_\_\_\_ to wear...

**8** Complete the passage with the words in the box.

inside      into      in      up  
outside      out of      towards      down

Anne Stewart is a news reporter working for the BBC. At the moment, she and her crew are broadcasting in front of a blazing business centre.

"The fire started at about three o'clock this afternoon. A delivery boy was on the first floor, waiting for someone to take a package, when he noticed smoke coming (1) \_\_\_\_\_ a storeroom. He immediately rushed (2) \_\_\_\_\_ the nearest office and raised the alarm. Minutes later, three fire engines were racing (3) \_\_\_\_\_ the scene. When they arrived, they quickly went into action. One fire officer entered the building and attempted to go (4) \_\_\_\_\_ the stairs to the higher floors, but the flames were too strong. At that moment, some other fire officers noticed some members of staff coming (5) \_\_\_\_\_ the fire escape at the side of the building and hurried to bring them to safety. The other fire officers were busy fighting the fire with jets of water from the engines.

There are now a lot of people standing here with me (6) \_\_\_\_\_ the building. Police are trying to hold the onlookers back. One or two members of staff are suffering from the fumes and so are on their way to hospital. The firemen are confident that there is no one left (7) \_\_\_\_\_ and that they will have the fire under control very shortly.

Reports suggest that the fire started (8) \_\_\_\_\_ a fuse box at the back of the storeroom, but it is too early to say for certain.

Now, back to the studio."

**9** Complete the sentences with the prepositions in the box.

along      into      up      outside  
across      out of      down      in  
towards      through      inside      on

- A: Leave your boots \_\_\_\_\_ the front door.  
B: But they'll get wet in the rain.
- Don't throw your rubbish \_\_\_\_\_ the car window. Take it home with you.
- I hate going \_\_\_\_\_ that tunnel on the train because they never put the lights on.
- Why is that woman walking \_\_\_\_\_ us? Do you know her?
- A: Do you take sugar \_\_\_\_\_ your tea?  
B: No, I don't.
- It's very warm \_\_\_\_\_ the house because they have a very good heating system.
- A: Let's go for a walk \_\_\_\_\_ the seashore.  
B: Yes, and let's take the dog with us.
- It's really difficult to get \_\_\_\_\_ the road here because there's always a lot of traffic.
- A: What are you doing?  
B: I dropped my earring \_\_\_\_\_ the bathtub drain, so I'm trying to get it out again.
- I don't like diving \_\_\_\_\_ the sea from high cliffs. I think it's very dangerous.
- Don't just leave your things \_\_\_\_\_ the table. Put them away!
- The smoke from the fire isn't going \_\_\_\_\_ the chimney properly. Perhaps it's blocked.

**Study the box.**

**-ing Constructions**

There's someone by the pond.  
He's **feeding** the ducks.

There's someone by the pond  
**feeding** the ducks.

There's a strange man. He's  
**running** out of the bank.

There's a strange man **running**  
out of the bank.

**10** Combine the two sentences as in the example.

e.g. There are a lot of people at the bus stop.  
They are waiting for the bus.  
There are a lot of people at the bus stop waiting for the bus.

1. There's a strange man outside. He's talking to your mother.  
\_\_\_\_\_

2. There's a huge dog out there. It's chasing our cat round the garden.  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. Oh look! There's a woman near the window. She's wearing exactly the same style of dress as you.  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. There are three women in that café. They're waving at us.  
\_\_\_\_\_

5. There are some children in the park. They're playing on the swings.  
\_\_\_\_\_

6. There's someone at the door. She's collecting money for charity.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**11** Ask the questions. Then answer them using the "verb + -ing" construction.

e.g. there/anyone/in the classroom (some students/do their assignment)

Is there anyone in the classroom?

Yes, there are some students in the classroom doing their assignment.

1. there/anyone/in front of the cinema (some people/wait to get tickets)  
\_\_\_\_\_

2. there/anyone/at the cash desk (two old women/pay for their shopping)  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. there/anyone/in the canteen (a few workers/have their lunch)  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. there/anyone/in the library (a professor/make notes for his next lecture)  
\_\_\_\_\_

5. there/anyone/on the beach (some children/look for seashells)  
\_\_\_\_\_

**12 The Grammaristan Olympic Team**

Arnold and Willis Jackson are television announcers. At the moment, they're describing the Grammaristan Olympic team's preparations.

Look at Picture 1 (*Olympians*) at the end of this book and complete their announcement by filling in the blanks: for the blanks followed by verbs in parentheses, use an appropriate tense of that verb; for the other blanks, use either a form of an appropriate verb from the box or an indefinite pronoun: *someone, anyone, everyone, no one* and *anything*. You can use some of these words more than once.

- |      |         |         |       |
|------|---------|---------|-------|
| do   | drink   | fly     | throw |
| go   | hand    | hop     | touch |
| jump | prepare | rest    | watch |
| run  | stand   | stretch |       |

Arnold: Hello (1) \_\_\_\_\_! Willis and I are here, at the Barcelona Stadium, (2) \_\_\_\_\_ the Grammaristan Olympic team prepare for this summer's games.

Willis: And it's very exciting, Arnold! The first Grammaristan team in history! Just five years ago, (3) \_\_\_\_\_ expected this small country to have a team—but here they are!

Arnold: Yes—here they are! There's Dan on the left side of the field (4) \_\_\_\_\_ water. Dan (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (*run*) the 5,000 metres for Grammaristan this year. And next to him is Ms. Tate, (6) \_\_\_\_\_ her toes—she's in the women's 5,000-metre race.

Willis: But look behind them! Who's that guy with the black moustache and beard? He's not doing (7) \_\_\_\_\_!

Arnold: No, he's not, and he (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (*not look*) very nice, either. But to his right is Chuck. Last year, Chuck (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (*work*) as a shop assistant; this year, he's a trainer. He (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (*watch*) his stopwatch right now ...

Willis: Yes, because there is (11) \_\_\_\_\_ on the right side of the field (12) \_\_\_\_\_ around the track; I think it's Gautham, but I can't see because his back is towards us.

Arnold: But don't forget Paul, the triple jumper. He's at the bottom left of your TV screen (13) \_\_\_\_\_ up and down. And on his left is the gymnast Seda (14) \_\_\_\_\_ on her hands.

Willis: And look! Siân (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (*crash*) into her! Can you see Siân there? She (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (*jump*) over the hurdle.

Arnold: And don't forget the great Necati! He's around the middle of your screen (17) \_\_\_\_\_ sit-ups, and he's the men's 1,500-metre runner. And behind him is the beautiful Gamze, (18) \_\_\_\_\_ her legs and arms—she's the women's 1,500-metre runner. And in front of Necati, Bill is on the ground (19) \_\_\_\_\_; he's the 200-metre runner.

Willis: And on Bill's left there is the fantastic Tahir Babacan, the marathon runner, with (20) \_\_\_\_\_ else—I think it's his personal trainer, Erman. Unfortunately, Arnold, Tahir (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (*not race*) in the games this year because he (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (*injure*) his knee last night.

Arnold: A great loss for the team. But don't worry, because we've also got Sue and Kate, half of the 4 x 100-metre relay team. Sue is on the right side of the field (23) \_\_\_\_\_ the baton to Kate. They (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (*perform*) great in the games, I'm sure!

Willis: Definitely! And there's Mr. Clark on the right side of your screen (25) \_\_\_\_\_ to run. He's the 100-metre runner, and I don't think that (26) \_\_\_\_\_ can run like him! (27) \_\_\_\_\_ can beat him, Arnold.

Arnold: I don't think so. But what about old Mr. Doubler (28) \_\_\_\_\_ rope on the grass over there, behind Sue? He's the decathlon athlete, and the heart of the team.

Willis: And what about the great field athletes? Do you see Mike (29) \_\_\_\_\_ through the air on the right side of your screen? He's the long jumper.

Arnold: And the great Ken is on the top of your screen (30) \_\_\_\_\_ the hammer—but look out! I think that hammer (31) \_\_\_\_\_ (*hit*) Ben, the white-bearded coach. He's in the middle of the field (32) \_\_\_\_\_ at someone.

Willis: And look there! Kenzo's javelin (33) \_\_\_\_\_ (*move*) through the air towards Mr. Doubler! And under that javelin, you can see Zuhai and Mrs. McCready (34) \_\_\_\_\_ over the bar in the high jump and the pole vault.

Arnold: Oh, boy, Willis—this (35) \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a great Olympics for Grammaristan!



# UNIT 7

## Simple Past and Past Continuous

1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with the verbs in the box. Use *was/were + V-ing*.

peep  
help

✓ make  
smile

enjoy  
design

squirt  
try

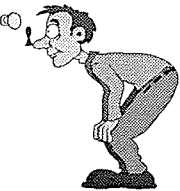
dream  
giggle



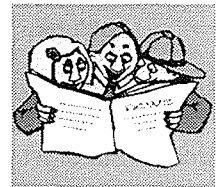
1. Mum was busy when I got home. She was making a cake.



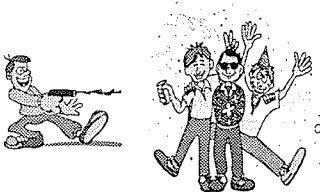
2. I walked past your shop yesterday. You \_\_\_\_\_ some new flower arrangements, so I didn't want to interrupt you.



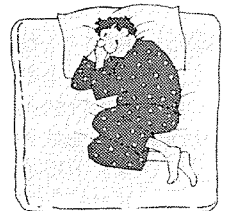
3. Jeff \_\_\_\_\_ through the keyhole.  
I wonder who was in the room!



4. Apparently, there was something funny in the newspaper, because they \_\_\_\_\_.



5. Everyone \_\_\_\_\_ Arnie's graduation party, but there was a small disturbance: his younger brother \_\_\_\_\_ water at people.



6. Jim \_\_\_\_\_ in his sleep. I think he \_\_\_\_\_ about something happy.



7. I met Amy yesterday afternoon.  
She \_\_\_\_\_ an elderly woman cross the street.



8. Tim \_\_\_\_\_ to escape from home, but suddenly, his father woke up and caught him.

2

Read the dialogue. Then answer the questions.

Chris: Hello, Dan. You look terrible. Didn't you sleep well?

Dan: No, I didn't. I stayed awake all night.

Chris: Why?

Dan: Didn't you feel the earthquake last night?

Chris: What earthquake? When?

Dan: It was at about 11 o'clock last night. It was quite strong. I'm surprised you didn't notice it.

Chris: Ah well, at 11 o'clock I was watching Dave's band in a club. They were playing pretty loudly, so I didn't hear anything. What were you doing?

Dan: I was reading in bed. In fact I was just picking up my coffee and I noticed that it was shaking in the cup. I nearly dropped it.

Chris: Wow! And then what happened?

Dan: Well, I looked round and everything was moving. The light was swinging from the ceiling. It sounded like a train passing.

Chris: Incredible! I really didn't feel a thing, but then, I was dancing. Anyway, how long did it last?

Dan: Oh, it stopped after about a minute.

Chris: So, why didn't you sleep after that?

Dan: Well, every time I fell asleep, I started dreaming that the house was falling down. So in the end, I just stayed awake.

Chris: Oh dear! Well, maybe you'll sleep better tonight.

Dan: I certainly hope so.

1. Why didn't Dan sleep well last night?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. What time did the earthquake happen?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. What was Dan doing around 11 o'clock last night?

\_\_\_\_\_

4. How did Dan realize that there was an earthquake?

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Why didn't Chris feel the earthquake ?

\_\_\_\_\_

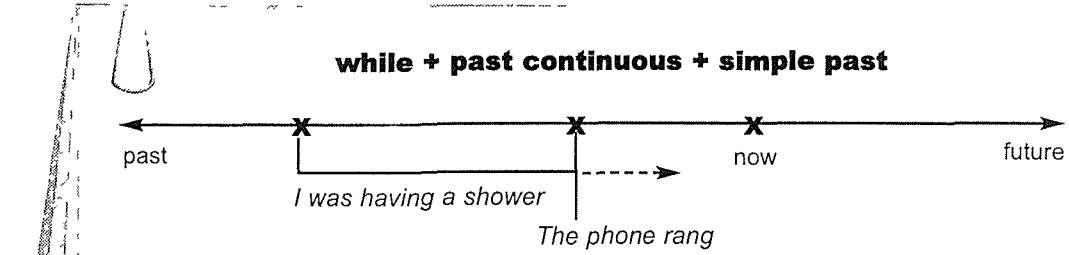
6. How long did the earthquake last?

\_\_\_\_\_

7. Why didn't Dan sleep after the earthquake?

\_\_\_\_\_

**Study the box.**



The phone rang **while I was having a shower.**

**While I was coming here,** I saw a terrible accident.

The lights went out **while we were watching a good movie on TV.**

**3** Yesterday Jack went to the Smiths' house to see his friend Sue. He was shocked when he entered the house because all the family had some sort of injury.

**Make dialogues between Jack and the Smiths using the information in the box.**

|            |              |                                |                   |
|------------|--------------|--------------------------------|-------------------|
| Sue        | break leg    | fall off my bike               | ride to the shops |
| Mr. Smith  | bruise thumb | bang it with a hammer          | put up shelves    |
| Mrs. Smith | cut finger   | the knife/slip                 | chop vegetables   |
| Mike       | sprain ankle | twist it                       | play football     |
| Tom        | scald foot   | drop a kettle of boiling water | make a pot of tea |

e.g. Jack: What happened to your leg, Sue?  
 Sue: I broke it.  
 Jack: How did it happen?  
 Sue: I fell off my bike while I was riding to the shops.

1. Jack: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Mr. Smith: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Jack: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Mr. Smith: \_\_\_\_\_

3. Jack: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Mike: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Jack: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Mike: \_\_\_\_\_

2. Jack: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Mrs. Smith: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Jack: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Mrs. Smith: \_\_\_\_\_

4. Jack: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Tom: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Jack: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Tom: \_\_\_\_\_

Study the box.

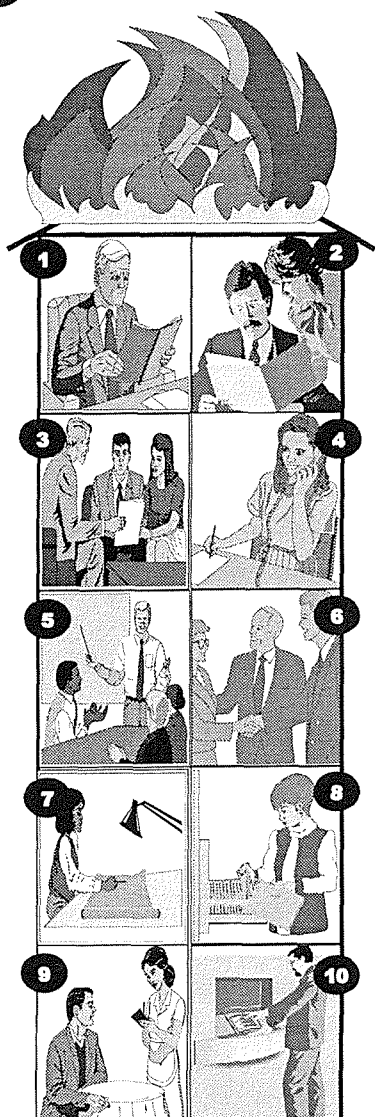
**When + simple past**

I was having a shower *when the phone rang.*

*When I got home*, my parents were having dinner.

The children were fighting *when I entered the room.*

4



- |           |        |          |         |       |
|-----------|--------|----------|---------|-------|
| ✓ examine | search | withdraw | discuss | shake |
| make      | take   | show     | explain | draw  |

*When the fire started, .....*

- Mr. Evans was examining his accounts.
- Mr. Arnold \_\_\_\_\_ his secretary something in a customer file.
- Mr. Rockett \_\_\_\_\_ a problem with his assistants.
- Ms. Cox \_\_\_\_\_ an important phone call to one of her customers.
- Mr. Mogel \_\_\_\_\_ his ideas to the others on the board.
- Ms. Harris \_\_\_\_\_ hands with her customers.
- Ms. Furlong \_\_\_\_\_ the designs for the new hotel project.
- Ms. Lane \_\_\_\_\_ for a file in the cabinet.
- Ms. Andrews \_\_\_\_\_ the orders of a customer.
- Mr. Wood \_\_\_\_\_ some money from the ATM on the ground floor of the building.

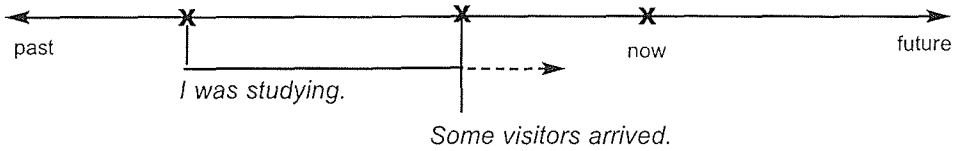
Study the box.



**While**

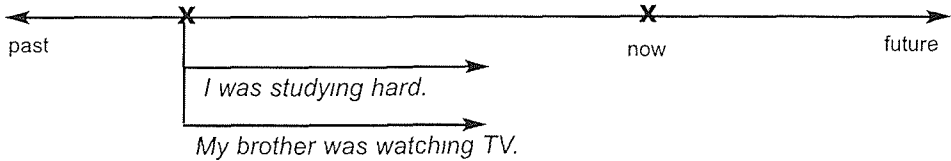
As and just as can also be used in the same meaning

1. While/As + past continuous + simple past



While/As I **was studying** last night, some visitors **arrived**.

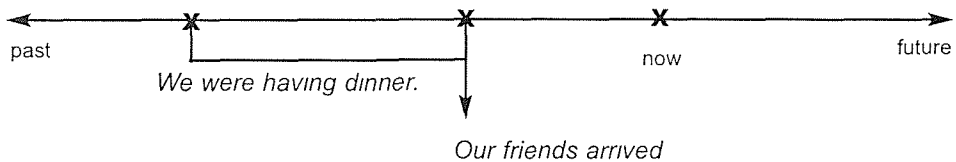
2. While/As + past continuous + past continuous



While/As I **was studying** hard for my exam last night, my brother **was watching** TV.

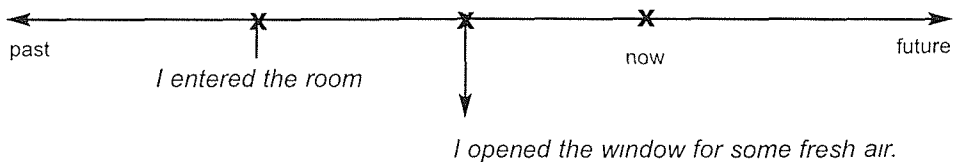
**When**

1. When + simple past + past continuous



When our friends **arrived**, we **were having** dinner

2. When + simple past + simple past



When I **entered** the room, I **opened** the window for some fresh air.

**5** Complete the sentences with the *simple past* or *past continuous* form of the verbs in parentheses.

e.g. My parents were eating (eat) dinner when I got (get) home.  
While I was riding (ride) my bicycle, I fell (fall) off and broke (break) my arm.

1. We \_\_\_\_\_ (play) tennis when the rain \_\_\_\_\_ (start).
2. It \_\_\_\_\_ (rain) when I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) outside, so I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) back in and \_\_\_\_\_ (get) my umbrella.
3. While Mum \_\_\_\_\_ (prepare) dinner, we \_\_\_\_\_ (tidy) up the living room and \_\_\_\_\_ (lay) the table.
4. He \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a shower when the phone \_\_\_\_\_ (ring), so he \_\_\_\_\_ (not, answer) it.
5. We \_\_\_\_\_ (see) Mandy while we \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) the dog in the park last night.
6. She \_\_\_\_\_ (get) ready for bed when her friend \_\_\_\_\_ (call) and \_\_\_\_\_ (invite) her to a late-night party.
7. The thief \_\_\_\_\_ (steal) my bag while I \_\_\_\_\_ (look) in a shop window.
8. While we \_\_\_\_\_ (listen) to the radio, we \_\_\_\_\_ (hear) an advertisement for a new sports centre near here.
9. When the fire brigade \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive), the fire \_\_\_\_\_ (burn) fiercely.
10. The plane \_\_\_\_\_ (take off) when one of its engines \_\_\_\_\_ (fail).
11. While I \_\_\_\_\_ (chop) some onions for dinner, I \_\_\_\_\_ (cut) my finger quite badly.
12. They \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) to catch their bus home when a friend \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) past and \_\_\_\_\_ (offer) them a lift.
13. His sisters \_\_\_\_\_ (play) in the snow outside while he \_\_\_\_\_ (lie) in bed with a broken leg.
14. When I \_\_\_\_\_ (see) Mrs. Green across the street, I \_\_\_\_\_ (wave) at her.
15. Helen \_\_\_\_\_ (begin) to run when she \_\_\_\_\_ (see) the bus round the corner.
16. While you \_\_\_\_\_ (enjoy) the sea and the sun in Side, I \_\_\_\_\_ (work) day and night to finish this project.

**6** a) Complete the passage with the *simple past* or *past continuous* forms of the verbs in the box.

|                |                |                  |              |
|----------------|----------------|------------------|--------------|
| <i>run</i>     | <i>examine</i> | <i>get</i>       | <i>drive</i> |
| <i>breathe</i> | <i>shake</i>   | <i>sing</i>      | <i>have</i>  |
| <i>try</i>     | <i>lie</i>     | <i>manage</i>    | <i>get</i>   |
| <i>crash</i>   | <i>arrive</i>  | <i>disappear</i> | <i>start</i> |

It was a lovely, sunny Saturday morning and Mr. Fox, as usual, (1) \_\_\_\_\_ to his golf club and (2) \_\_\_\_\_ along to one of his cassettes. Suddenly, a large deer (3) \_\_\_\_\_ out of the trees into the road and (4) \_\_\_\_\_ into his car. Immediately, he (5) \_\_\_\_\_ out of the car to have a look. The poor thing (6) \_\_\_\_\_ on its side on the ground. It (7) \_\_\_\_\_ noisily and was clearly frightened. Fortunately, Mr. Fox (8) \_\_\_\_\_ his mobile phone with him and (9) \_\_\_\_\_ to get hold of a vet.

The vet (10) \_\_\_\_\_ very quickly, but while he (11) \_\_\_\_\_ the deer, it (12) \_\_\_\_\_ to struggle. It (13) \_\_\_\_\_ to stand up. With Mr. Fox and the vet's help, it (14) \_\_\_\_\_ to its feet. Then it (15) \_\_\_\_\_ its head and (16) \_\_\_\_\_ into the woods. Mr. Fox was relieved because the deer wasn't injured.

b) Write T (True) or F (False) for the statements below.

- 1. Mr. Fox hit the deer because he wasn't driving carefully.
- 2. Mr. Fox hit the deer on the way to his golf club.
- 3. The deer appeared in front of the car all of a sudden.
- 4. The deer was standing in front of the car when Mr. Fox got out.
- 5. Mr. Fox got out of the car without delay to examine the deer.
- 6. Mr. Fox called a vet from a phone box near the spot.
- 7. Unfortunately, it took the vet quite a long time to arrive at the spot.
- 8. The deer ran off when it managed to stand up.
- 9. Mr. Fox was sorry because the deer was dying.

**7**

Read the sentence and choose the right answer.

e.g. When I noticed Mrs Green, she was waving at me.

- a) She started waving when I saw her.
- ✓ b) She started waving before I saw her.

1. When I arrived home, my parents were eating dinner.

- a) I found them at the dinner table.
- b) They started eating when I got home.

2. When I rang the door bell, their dog started barking.

- a) The dog was barking before I rang the bell.
- b) I rang the bell and then the dog started barking.

3. When we walked into the conference room, the chairman was making his speech.

- a) We missed the beginning of his speech.
- b) We walked in and then he began his speech.

4. It was raining when she took the dog for a walk.

- a) The rain started before she went out with the dog.
- b) She was out with the dog and it started to rain.

5. The little girl cried when we offered to help her.

- a) We noticed the little girl's tears before we offered to help.
- b) We offered to help the little girl and she started crying.

6. When the boat left the harbour, I felt very ill.

- a) Outside the harbour, I became ill.
- b) I was ill before the boat left the harbour.

**8** Complete the following four stories of a robbery using the past simple or past continuous form of the verbs in the box above each account. Then, try to answer the question at the end of the four stories.

*A couple of hours ago, somebody robbed the Fancy Town Bank. Now, the police are interviewing the four bank clients in order to get a description of the robbers and the events. Unfortunately for the police, however, here in Fancy, everyone seems to remember things quite differently ...*

**a) Zelda Zany's Story**

*not see, not shoot, give, have, leave, look, see, tell, take, face, carry, keep, wear*

I (1) \_\_\_\_\_ exactly six robbers. Five of them (2) \_\_\_\_\_ clown costumes, but the sixth—the leader—(3) \_\_\_\_\_ a suit of armour on. He (4) \_\_\_\_\_ exactly like a medieval knight, except for his M-16. All six robbers (5) \_\_\_\_\_ M-16s, but they (6) \_\_\_\_\_ them at all. The knight (7) \_\_\_\_\_ the bank teller to give him all the money from the safe at the back of the bank while the clowns (8) \_\_\_\_\_ us on the floor by pointing their M-16s at us. I (9) \_\_\_\_\_ much after this because I (10) \_\_\_\_\_ the floor the whole time. As far as I know, the bank teller (11) \_\_\_\_\_ the knight the money and then the robbers (12) \_\_\_\_\_. The whole thing (13) \_\_\_\_\_ less than five minutes.

**b) Peter Plain's Story**

*come, not last, drop, hear, open, run, shoot, tell, go, laugh, lie, wear*

There were only two robbers. They (1) \_\_\_\_\_ plain brown suits, and I (2) \_\_\_\_\_ them talking in a strange language. They (3) \_\_\_\_\_ into the bank and immediately they (4) \_\_\_\_\_ two bullets into the ceiling. Everyone (5) \_\_\_\_\_ to the ground, and they (6) \_\_\_\_\_ us to stay there. While we (7) \_\_\_\_\_ on the ground, the men (8) \_\_\_\_\_ into the back of the bank and (9) \_\_\_\_\_ the safe. A few minutes later, they (10) \_\_\_\_\_ out of the bank. They (11) \_\_\_\_\_ in a very strange manner, too. And that's all. It (12) \_\_\_\_\_ more than five minutes.

**c) Freddy Flabbergaster's Story**

*ask, come, fall, feel, find, get, have, hold, leave, look, see, smell, hold, take*

I (1) \_\_\_\_\_ at least fifty robbers. They were all aliens. They (2) \_\_\_\_\_ like giant green meatballs, and they (3) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of slimy tentacles like octopuses. When they (4) \_\_\_\_\_ into the bank, everyone (5) \_\_\_\_\_ scared and (6) \_\_\_\_\_ to the floor. Me, too. Then, some of the aliens (7) \_\_\_\_\_ us to the ground with their tentacles while the other aliens (8) \_\_\_\_\_ the money out of the safe at the back of the bank. Their tentacles (9) \_\_\_\_\_ really slimy, like slugs, and they (10) \_\_\_\_\_ bad, too—like rotten eggs. While the aliens (11) \_\_\_\_\_ us down, I (12) \_\_\_\_\_ myself, "Why do aliens need money?" But I never (13) \_\_\_\_\_ the answer, because just three or four minutes later they (14) \_\_\_\_\_ with the money.

**d) Loretta Lush's Story**

*command, enter, finish, guard, have, hurry, kick, move, resemble, start, stare, remove*

There were about ten robbers in all, and all of them (1) \_\_\_\_\_ samurai swords, pink pajamas, pink bunny slippers, and masks. The masks (2) \_\_\_\_\_ the masks of Japanese Noh theatre. When they (3) \_\_\_\_\_, the robbers (4) \_\_\_\_\_ us to stay on the floor. Two of the robbers then (5) \_\_\_\_\_ to stand by the door, so that we couldn't escape. About five of the robbers (6) \_\_\_\_\_ us while the others (7) \_\_\_\_\_ the money from the safe at the back of the bank. At one point, one of the robbers (8) \_\_\_\_\_ me in the face while I (9) \_\_\_\_\_ at his pink bunny slippers, and my nose (10) \_\_\_\_\_ to bleed. Just a moment after that, all of the robbers (11) \_\_\_\_\_ out of the bank. The whole robbery (12) \_\_\_\_\_ in about four or five minutes.

**e) All of the stories have four elements in common. Can you find them?**

1. In each story, there is \_\_\_\_\_ robber.
2. In each story, the clients at the bank \_\_\_\_\_.
3. In each story, the location of the safe is \_\_\_\_\_.
4. In each story, the robbery ends \_\_\_\_\_ or less.



**9 The French Revolution**

**A. Complete the passage below with the correct form of the verbs given in the box: *simple past* or *past continuous*.**

|         |        |         |            |        |        |       |
|---------|--------|---------|------------|--------|--------|-------|
| anger   | arrest | arrive  | attack     | battle | kill   | write |
| become  | begin  | capture | change     | create | lead   | keep  |
| declare | die    | end     | experience | fight  | refuse | put   |
| form    | gain   | grow    | inspire    |        |        |       |

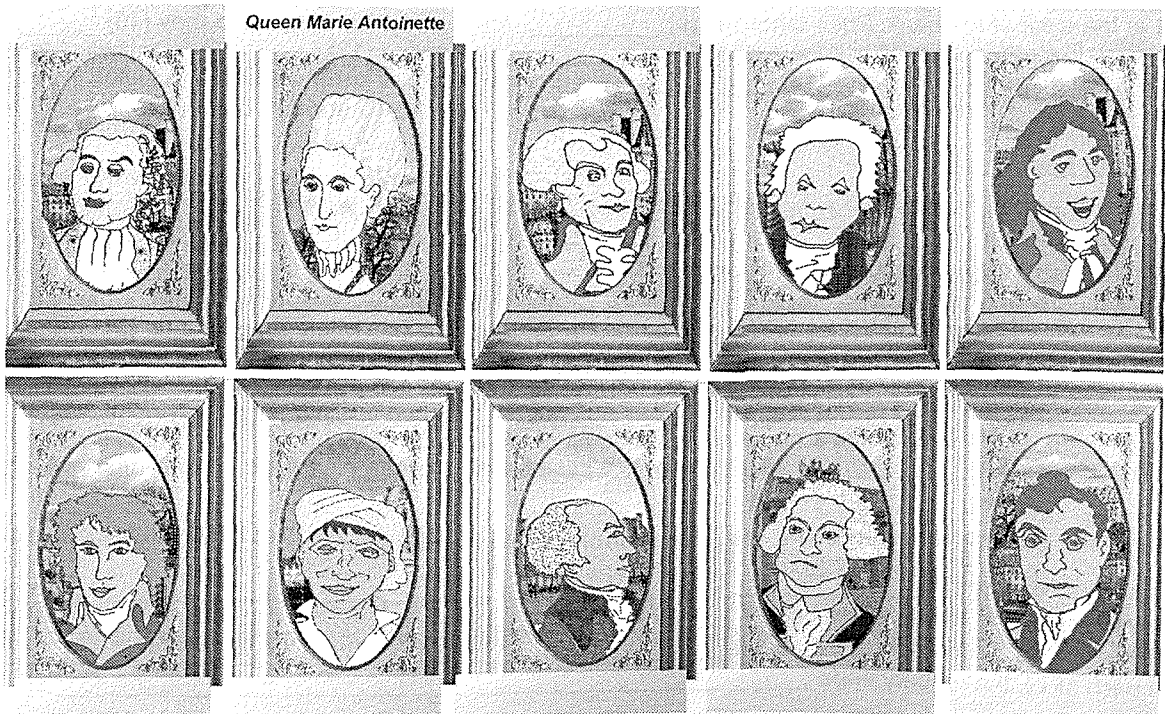
In 1789, France (1) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of problems. There was not enough food. There was not enough money. There was not enough concern for the kingdom's people. The country was ready for a change. That change (2) \_\_\_\_\_ in July. A crowd of Parisians (3) \_\_\_\_\_ the Bastille prison, while at the same time, the National Constituent Assembly—a kind of parliament—(4) \_\_\_\_\_ a constitution. This constitution (5) \_\_\_\_\_ equality for all people. But the French king, Louis XVI, (6) \_\_\_\_\_ to support it, and so a group of revolutionaries (7) \_\_\_\_\_ him and his family in 1792 and (8) \_\_\_\_\_ them in prison for many months. The same year, war (9) \_\_\_\_\_ between France and Austria and Prussia. During this period, France (10) \_\_\_\_\_ more and more chaotic: many different groups with different ideas (11) \_\_\_\_\_ against each other. A new government (12) \_\_\_\_\_ in September 1792 and (13) \_\_\_\_\_ a republic. In January the next year, this government (14) \_\_\_\_\_ the king's life with the guillotine. Meanwhile, the government (15) \_\_\_\_\_ more and more authoritarian, and in the end, this (16) \_\_\_\_\_ to the Reign of Terror. During the Reign of Terror, many people from different groups (17) \_\_\_\_\_ on the guillotine while the republic's soldiers (18) \_\_\_\_\_ wars on France's borders. This situation (19) \_\_\_\_\_ many people, and in July 1794, a small group (20) \_\_\_\_\_ the government's leader—Maximilien Robespierre—and (21) \_\_\_\_\_ him. Slowly, the new government (22) \_\_\_\_\_ an end to France's wars and (23) \_\_\_\_\_ control of most of the country.

The French Revolution (24) \_\_\_\_\_ everything in France, and (25) \_\_\_\_\_ people all around the world.

**B. Who were the main actors of the Revolution?**

Look at Picture 2 (*The French Revolution*) at the end of this book and read the descriptions given below. Then write the names of the leaders who were involved in the French Revolution of 1789.

Queen Marie Antoinette



- 1 **Georges Danton** was quite ugly because, as a child, a bull kicked his face. He started the *Cordeliers Club*: this was the first group to spread the idea of a republic in place of a monarchy, and they did this partly through leaflets. Danton also helped to organize the attack on the *Tuileries Palace* in 1792. In this attack, revolutionaries captured King Louis XVI and his wife, Marie Antoinette. Later, Danton voted to execute the king and queen. After their deaths, he helped to organize the *Reign of Terror* with Jean-Paul Marat and Maximilien Robespierre. But he wasn't as radical as Robespierre, so he wanted to stop the *Reign of Terror*. Robespierre decided to arrest Danton, and Danton died on the guillotine on 5 April 1794.
- 2 **Camille Desmoulins** was a very passionate speaker. He played an important part in starting the French Revolution on 12 July 1789: he gave a short speech to an angry crowd, and the crowd then started to collect weapons. Two days later, they attacked the Bastille, and the revolution began. He became a friend of Maximilien Robespierre, but later he disagreed with him and became friends with Robespierre's opponent Georges Danton. Because of this, Robespierre arrested him and, on 5 April 1794, Desmoulins died on the guillotine.
- 3 **Marquis de La Fayette** was a lover of freedom, and served as a soldier in the American Revolution and helped the young country to form an alliance with France. He joined the revolution in France in 1789, and he designed the blue, white, and red French flag at the time. He became a commander of the national guard, but soon he started to worry about the revolution's violence. Because of this, he made many enemies, and so he left the country. The Austrian army captured him in Belgium and held him in prison for five years. Many years later, he played an important part in the Revolution of 1830.
- 4 **Jacques Hébert** was the editor of the radical newspaper *Le Père Duchesne*. He was also an important member of Georges Danton's *Cordeliers Club*, the first group to spread the idea of a republic instead of monarchy. Hébert became an enemy of Maximilien Robespierre, and he used his newspaper to attack Robespierre and his ideas in a very violent way. In the end, Robespierre arrested Hébert and some of his supporters, and, in March 1794, they died on the guillotine.
- 5 **Louis de Saint-Just** was a poet before he became a revolutionary. He became a close friend of Maximilien Robespierre, and so he quickly became an important person in Robespierre's government. He also had an important role as a director in the army at the time. But on 28 July 1794, Robespierre's government fell, and the enemies of Robespierre killed Saint-Just and many other people.
- 6 **King Louis XVI** became king of France in 1774. He was not very interested in ruling the country: he generally preferred to go hunting, and so many people made his decisions for him. One of these people was his Austrian wife, Marie Antoinette. With her influence, he broke his promises to the *National Constituent Assembly* and the people of France, and so everyone started to hate him. He became afraid, and he tried to escape the country in 1792. The revolutionaries caught him and put him on trial. There, they found him guilty of betraying the country, and on 21 January 1793, they cut off his head.
- 7 **Jean-Paul Marat** was originally a scientist and philosopher. But in 1788 he abandoned this career and began to take part in revolutionary activities. He was a very aggressive person, and supported violent attacks on the government. He was always an independent, and he never joined any specific group in the French Revolution. But he helped to organize the *Reign of Terror*, made many enemies, and went into hiding from them several times. On 13 July 1793, he was taking a bath. A woman came into his room and gave him the names of several enemies of the government. He signed an order to kill them, but then the woman stabbed him in the chest with a knife and killed him.
- 8 **Marie Antoinette** was the daughter of the Empress of Austria. She married Louis XVI before he became king. After he became king, Marie Antoinette began to spend a lot of money on clothes, jewellery, and parties. This was a problem, because at the time, France was in serious economic trouble. Because of her actions, she made many enemies in the government and among the people. After the revolution, the revolutionaries captured her together with her husband. After her husband's death, she stayed alone in prison for many months. In October 1793, the revolutionaries put her on trial and found her guilty. They cut off her head on 16 October.
- 9 **Maximilien Robespierre** was a small man, and was always very well-dressed. He was the leader of the *Jacobin Club*. The Jacobins were radicals and they wanted to exile or kill the French nobility. After revolutionaries captured the king and queen in 1792, Robespierre became one of the new government's main leaders. After the deaths of Jean-Paul Marat and Georges Danton, he became the most powerful man in the country. He helped to organize the *Reign of Terror*, but he also made many enemies, and listed them in a little black book. On 27 July 1794, Robespierre's enemies arrested him, and the next day he died on the guillotine.
- 10 **Count Honoré Mirabeau** had the disease called smallpox as a young man, and so he had scars on his face. He was against the great power of the king, and became a part of the *National Constituent Assembly*. Here, he became a strong supporter of the people of France against the monarchy and looked forward to a change in government. But after the revolution started, Mirabeau became afraid of the increasing violence. He tried to change the revolution's direction, but died of illness on 2 April 1791.

C. What were the leaders doing on the eve of the Revolution?

The leaders were all busy on the eve of the Revolution. They were getting ready for the historic day, but were the King and the Queen aware of what was happening around them? Apparently not.

Match the following verbs with the expressions given in the box. Then, looking at the picture, write a few sentences about each character as in the example. Use *past continuous* tense in your sentences.

read  
sell  
distribute  
wave  
eat  
admire  
load  
stand  
write  
deliver  
look

a speech  
on the statue  
leaflets to people  
a piece of cake  
one of his own poems  
newspapers  
at his watch  
himself in the mirror  
a flag  
the gun with explosives  
his book

On the eve of the Revolution, .....

1. Queen Marie Antoinette was having a tour of the city in a coach with her husband, King Louis XVI. She was wearing a blue dress and holding a lace handkerchief in her hand. She wasn't looking around, because she was very busy: she was eating a piece of cake!

2. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

5. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

6. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

7. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

8. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

9. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

10. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

# UNIT 8

## The Present Perfect Tense

I/You/We/They + have/haven't + past participle

He/She/It + has/hasn't + past participle

They've **never been** on holiday abroad.

**Have** you ever **tried** scuba diving?

He **has visited** us twice so far.

She **has made** the same mistake before.

The past participle form of regular verbs is the same as the simple past form.

| base form | simple past | past participle |
|-----------|-------------|-----------------|
| walk      | walked      | walked          |
| listen    | listened    | listened        |

The past participle form of some irregular verbs is the same as the simple past form. But some verbs have different past participle forms.

| base form | simple past | past participle |
|-----------|-------------|-----------------|
| bring     | brought     | brought         |
| write     | wrote       | written         |

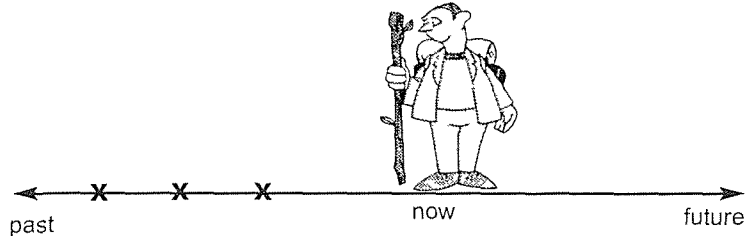
## Use of The Present Perfect Tense

1. Use the present perfect tense when you're talking about your past experiences without giving a specific time.

I **have done** a lot of travelling.

I **have been** to many countries.

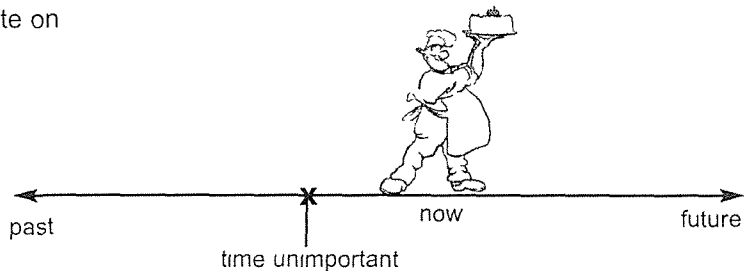
I've **met** many people from different cultures.



2. Use this tense when you concentrate on the result of an action.

Mr Cook **has made** a cake. (It's ready to eat now.)

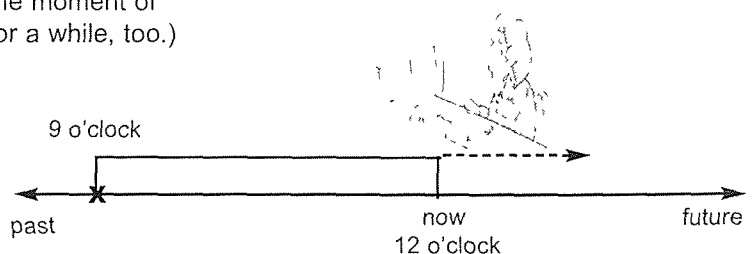
Mum **has just finished** washing the dishes. (They are clean now.)



3. Use this tense when you're talking about an action which begins in the past and continues until the moment of speaking. (And probably will continue for a while, too.)

Mary **has been** at the computer **since 9 o'clock**.

She has been at her desk **for three hours**.





The verb "go" has two forms in the Present Perfect Tense: "gone" and "been".

| gone  | been   |
|---|--|
| <p>"Gone" is used in the present perfect tense if the person is in or on the way to the place mentioned.</p> <p>— Can I talk to Kate, please?<br/>— Sorry, she's not at home. She <b>has gone</b> shopping.<br/>(At the moment, she may be at the shops, on the way to the shops, or on the way back home.)</p> | <p>"Been" is used if you want to say that you've seen the place mentioned. At the time of speaking, you may not be there.</p> <p>— <b>Have</b> you ever <b>been</b> to the United States?<br/>— No, but I've <b>been</b> to several cities in Europe.<br/>— <b>Have</b> you <b>been</b> here before?<br/>— No, this is my first visit.</p> |

1

You gave five of your classmates a questionnaire yesterday. Here are the results.

|                          | Emre | Ali | Özlem | Hülya | Ozan |
|--------------------------|------|-----|-------|-------|------|
| try parasailing          | 2    | 0   | 0     | 3+    | 1    |
| eat Indian food          | 0    | 3+  | 0     | 2     | 1    |
| ride a horse             | 3+   | 3+  | 0     | 0     | 2    |
| write a short story      | 0    | 1   | 1     | 0     | 1    |
| act in a film            | 1    | 2   | 0     | 0     | 0    |
| win the lottery          | 0    | 1   | 2     | 0     | 0    |
| steal something/anything | 2    | 0   | 1     | 2     | 1    |
| have a serious accident  | 1    | 0   | 2     | 1     | 0    |
| climb a mountain         | 3+   | 2   | 0     | 1     | 2    |
| go abroad                | 1    | 0   | 3+    | 0     | 2    |

a) Study the results of the questionnaire and complete the sentences with *have/has + past participle* using *never, once, twice* and *many times*.

e.g. Ali has never been abroad.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. Ali _____ parasailing.</p> <p>2. Ali, Özlem, and Ozan _____ a short story _____.</p> <p>3. Özlem _____ two serious accidents.</p> <p>4. Ozan _____ abroad _____.</p> | <p>5. Ali and Ozan _____ a serious accident.</p> <p>6. Emre and Hülya _____ something _____.</p> <p>7. Ali _____ anything.</p> <p>8. Özlem _____ the lottery _____.</p> |
|--|---|

b) Ask and answer the questions according to the table.

e.g. who/try/parasailing/twice  
Who has tried parasailing twice?

Emre.

Emre/ever/ride a horse  
Has Emre ever ridden a horse?

Yes, he has ridden a horse many times.

- |                                  |       |       |
|----------------------------------|-------|-------|
| 1. who/never/try parasailing     | _____ | _____ |
| 2. who/ride a horse/many times   | _____ | _____ |
| 3. Özlem/ever/steal anything     | _____ | _____ |
| 4. Özlem/ever/climb a mountain   | _____ | _____ |
| 5. how many times/Emre/go abroad | _____ | _____ |
| 6. who/act in a film/only once   | _____ | _____ |

**2**

Work with your partner and ask each other questions as in the example.

e.g. A: Have you ever been to England? B: No, I haven't./Yes, I have.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. go to England</li> <li>2. go abroad</li> <li>3. speak to a politician personally</li> <li>4. receive an expensive gift</li> <li>5. lose something very valuable</li> <li>6. have a camping holiday</li> <li>7. sing in front of a big audience</li> <li>8. take part in a play</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>9. receive a "0" on an exam</li> <li>10. cheat on an exam</li> <li>11. give away your best friend's secret</li> <li>12. commit a gaffe on a formal occasion</li> <li>13. buy something and then leave it at the shop</li> <li>14. steal fruit from your neighbours' orchards</li> <li>15. cry at the end of a romantic film</li> <li>16. fall in love</li> </ol> |
|---|---|

**3**

Tim always takes a job in his summer holidays. This year, he is helping Mr. Fisher at his filling station in King's Road. Tim gets £100 a week. He saves most of his money because he wants to buy a motorbike.

*At the moment, they have a customer and Mr. Fisher is giving Tim his instructions.*

Mr. Fisher: Tim, check the oil in Mr. Kent's car and wash the windscreen, too. It's dirty.  
 Tim: Okay, Mr. Fisher.  
 Mr. Kent: Oh, and can you have a look at the battery, Tim? It doesn't seem to be charging very well.  
 Tim: Certainly, Mr. Kent.  
 Mr. Fisher: Oh, and Tim, the rear tyres look a bit flat. Put some air in them, and wipe the lights. They're muddy.  
 Tim: Right, no problem.  
 Mr. Kent: Tim, please can you fill up the radiator as well? I think the water level is low because the engine was getting rather hot earlier.  
 Tim: Of course. I'll do it all right away.

*(Half an hour later.)*

Tim: I (1) have checked the oil and it's okay, Mr. Fisher.  
 Mr. Fisher: Good. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ the windscreen yet?  
 Tim: Yes, and I (3) \_\_\_\_\_ the lights, so they're all clean now.  
 Mr. Kent: What about the battery? (4) \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ a look at it yet?  
 Tim: Yes, just now. It's fine at the moment, but you need to charge it up at night. I (5) \_\_\_\_\_ up the radiator yet, but you're right—the water level is low, so I'm doing it now.  
 Mr. Fisher: And the tyres. What about them?  
 Tim: Oh, I (6) \_\_\_\_\_ already \_\_\_\_\_ some air in them. I did the front ones, too, because they were also a little flat.  
 Mr. Kent: Well, that's great. You finish doing the radiator and I'll be off. Thanks, Tim. Bye, Mr. Fisher—and thanks.  
 Mr. Fisher: Goodbye, Mr. Kent. See you again.

**4** It's 9 o'clock on Sunday morning. The Greens are going to have a picnic in the country. At the moment, they're all very busy.

- Carol is fetching some things for the picnic from the supermarket.
- Mr. Green is changing the left rear wheel.
- Jim is washing the car.
- Mrs. Green is preparing some sandwiches for the picnic.

(An hour later, they're all back in the house.)

Mrs. Green: Carol, (1) Have you fetched the things from the supermarket?

Carol: Yes, I (2) \_\_\_\_\_. They're in the basket. Dad, (3) \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ the wheel?

Mr. Green: Yes, I (4) \_\_\_\_\_. The old one's in the boot now.

Mrs. Green: Jim, (5) \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ the car?

Jim: Yes, I (6) \_\_\_\_\_. It's clean now.

Carol: Mum, (7) \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ the sandwiches?

Mrs. Green: Oh! Yes, I (8) \_\_\_\_\_. They're ready now.

Mr. Green: If everything is ready, what are we waiting for? Let's go.

**5 Who's been in this kitchen?**

a) Look at Picture 3 (*Who's Been Here?*) at the end of this book. Which of the following items are in the pictures? Put a ✓ next to the item if it is in the picture.

- |                  |                     |                  |                    |
|------------------|---------------------|------------------|--------------------|
| ___ aspirator    | ___ blinds          | ___ carpet       | ___ cat bowl       |
| ___ chair        | ___ coffee machine  | ___ cupboard     | ___ curtain        |
| ___ deep-freezer | ___ dresser         | ___ dishwasher   | ___ fountain       |
| ___ fridge       | ___ frying pan      | ___ glass        | ___ jar            |
| ___ kettle       | ___ leaflet         | ___ magnet       | ___ microwave oven |
| ___ napkin       | ___ newspaper       | ___ oven         | ___ paper towel    |
| ___ pot          | ___ sink            | ___ tap          | ___ tile           |
| ___ wallpaper    | ___ washing machine | ___ window frame | ___ worktop        |

b) The owner of this kitchen overslept this morning and had to leave home in a hurry. Her kitchen was in a mess when she left, but when she came back, she found it tidy. Apparently, someone has been in this kitchen today! Now she's trying to find the changes. Can you help her?

(She is in the middle of the kitchen looking around and talking to herself.)

Well, let's see... Someone has washed the dishes. And ... Oh, thank you darling, but it looked much better with your name on it.

Continue in the same way, and try to find as many changes as possible.

c) From one of the changes, the owner of the kitchen has easily found out who's been in her flat today. Have you found it? And what's the name of the person who's been there?

Study the box.

**yet/just/already**

Use **yet** in questions and in negative statements.

A: Have you finished all of your homework **yet**?  
 B: No, I haven't finished it all **yet**. I'm still working on my maths assignment.

Use **just** for actions you completed a very short time before the moment of speaking.

A: Have you typed that letter for me **yet**?  
 B: Yes, I've **just** finished it. Here you are.

Use **already** in positive statements for actions that happened before the moment of speaking—sometimes earlier than expected.

A: We must buy the tickets for the play before the weekend, or there won't be any left.  
 B: Oh, I've **already** bought them.

A: Darling, can you take my black suit to the dry-cleaner's? There are a few stains on both the jacket and the trousers.  
 B: I've **already** done that. I'll pick them up tomorrow.

6

Complete the dialogues with *have/has + just + the past participle* of the verbs in the box.

✓ eat      drink      leave      finish  
 make      receive      fall      call

- A: Come and join us for the meal.  
 B: No, thanks. I have just eaten my lunch.
- A: Will Jane be able to afford to go on the trip with us?  
 B: I think so. She \_\_\_\_\_ a pay rise.
- A: Why are you watching television instead of doing your homework?  
 B: I \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- A: Oh, are you leaving? I \_\_\_\_\_ some tea.  
 B: Sorry, but I have to go now.
- A: Would you like some coffee?  
 B: No, thanks. I \_\_\_\_\_ two cups, and I don't want any more.
- A: Does your brother in the USA know about your wedding?  
 B: Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ him and told him about it.
- A: Are you coming, Jane?  
 B: I'm afraid I can't. The baby \_\_\_\_\_ asleep, and I'll have to wait for him to wake up.
- A: May I speak to Mr. Arnold, please?  
 B: Sorry, he isn't in. He \_\_\_\_\_ for a meeting.



**7** Make sentences with “*still*” and “*yet*” using the words in parentheses. Do as in the example.

e.g. Dad/work in the garden — not mow the lawn  
Dad is still working in the garden.    He hasn't mown the lawn yet.

1. We/not finish redecorate the house — paint the kitchen  
 \_\_\_\_\_
2. Mum/do the shopping — not come home  
 \_\_\_\_\_
3. I/wait for his letter — it/not arrive  
 \_\_\_\_\_
4. He/not start cooking — light the barbecue  
 \_\_\_\_\_
5. The children/not go to bed — watch that film  
 \_\_\_\_\_

**8** Make sentences with “*yet*” and “*already*” using the words in parentheses as in the examples.

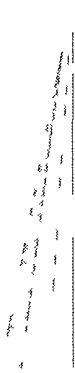
e.g. Don't give anything to the cat. (I/feed/it)  
I've already fed it.

Dinner isn't ready. (Mum/not make/the salad)  
Mum hasn't made the salad yet.

(you/write/to your grandmother/?)  
 A: Have you written to your grandmother yet?  
 B: Yes, I posted the letter yesterday.

1. (the manager/tell/you about the changes/?)  
 A: \_\_\_\_\_  
 B: Yes, he spoke to us last week.
2. Don't buy a cake for Mike's birthday. (I/order/one)  
 \_\_\_\_\_
3. You don't have to do the washing-up. (Sarah/do/it)  
 \_\_\_\_\_
4. You can't borrow this book. (I/not read/it)  
 \_\_\_\_\_
5. (the postman/bring/the post/?)  
 A: \_\_\_\_\_  
 B: No, we're waiting for it, too.
6. I can't give you the report. (my secretary/not finish/typing it)  
 \_\_\_\_\_

**Study the box.**



Use the present perfect tense when you're talking about past actions without giving a definite time

We've **taken** two exams so far this week  
I've **been** to Germany twice

Use the simple past tense when you're talking about past actions giving a definite time

We **took** an exam **yesterday**.  
I **went** to Germany **last summer**.

**9**

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses: *simple past, present perfect or "going to" future.*

Jill is on holiday in Paris and she is writing a letter to her friend, Molly

Dear Molly,

Hello! How are you? Here I am in Paris and it's wonderful I (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (be) here for a week now I (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) last Saturday, and I (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) for another week I'm with my cousin, Max, and we're staying in the Hotel du Nord, opposite Paris Nord station

So, what (4) \_\_\_\_\_ we \_\_\_\_\_ (do) so far? Well, we (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (already, go) to the Louvre museum and we (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (see) the "Mona Lisa" We (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (go) there last Monday actually, and the queues (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (be) terrible The "Mona Lisa" is much smaller than I (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (think) I don't know why it's so famous! And what else? Oh yes, we (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to EuroDisney We (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (go) on Tuesday and (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (take) the train from Paris Nord We (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a great time I (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (like) Space Wars best, but Max (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (like) the River Mountain Ride We (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (get) really wet on that!

We (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (not, climb) the Eiffel Tower yet We (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (do) that tomorrow Max (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (climb) to the top, but I (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) at the half-way point It looks very high!

We (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (not, go) out much in the evenings yet We're always too tired, but tonight we (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (take) an evening cruise along the Seine and then tomorrow we (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (listen) to the jazz musicians in the Latin Quarter

Oh, and of course I (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (already, do) lots of shopping I (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) some very stylish clothes and some paintings from the street artists in Montmartre Yes, I (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) a present for you, too! But you'll have to wait to see what it is I (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (get) it yesterday actually

Well, I must finish now This afternoon we (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) some friends of Max's and they (29) \_\_\_\_\_ (show) us round Hopefully, they'll take us to the Champs Elysees and the L'Arc de Triomphe

It's a pity you can't be here with me, but I'll tell you all about it when I get home  
Take care, and see you soon

Love

Jill

**10 Which verb goes with which noun?**

a) Match the activities with the most appropriate verb. Put each activity in only one column.

Activities:

- |             |                       |                   |
|-------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| a break     | a cake                | a decision        |
| a funeral   | a heavy metal concert | an apology        |
| a mistake   | a test                | an art exhibition |
| an opera    | a play                | another country   |
| dancing     | fishing               | hunting           |
| skiing      | someone a favour      | swimming          |
| the cooking | the laundry by hand   |                   |

| Do | Go | Go to | Make | Take | Watch |
|----|----|-------|------|------|-------|
|    |    |       |      |      |       |

b) Work with a partner or partners and ask each other questions using *present perfect tense* and the following time phrases: *ever, this year, this month, this week, and today*. Then, ask follow-up questions about your partner or partners' experiences.

- e.g. You: Have you been to the cinema this month?  
 Your partner: Yes, I have.  
 You: When did you go?  
 Your partner: Last Saturday.  
 You: Which film did you see?  
 Your partner: I saw *The Da Vinci Code*.  
 You: How did you find the film?  
 Your partner: Oh, I liked it. It was great.  
 You: Were you alone or with your family or friends?  
 Your partner: I was with my cousins Melike and Selen.  
 You: Did they like the film, too?  
 Your partner: I think so.

.....

**2**

Complete the sentences with *in, on, at, since, for, ago, or yet*.

e.g. I met Jim at 2 o'clock.  
I haven't seen Jim since 2 o'clock.

1. I graduated from university \_\_\_\_\_ 1986. \_\_\_\_\_ then, I've been a teacher.
2. Mr. Eames went out of town three days \_\_\_\_\_ and hasn't come back \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I haven't been to the cinema \_\_\_\_\_ three months.
4. I clearly remember that we met him \_\_\_\_\_ Monday morning.
5. He hasn't phoned me \_\_\_\_\_ Monday morning. I'm really worried about him.
6. We haven't had the opportunity to take a long holiday \_\_\_\_\_ years. I think the last time we had a twenty-day holiday was six years \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Their wedding was \_\_\_\_\_ July, so they've been married \_\_\_\_\_ four months now.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ 8 o'clock this morning, you've made seven phone calls.
9. The conference started \_\_\_\_\_ 10 o'clock this morning and finished \_\_\_\_\_ the afternoon.
10. He had a serious accident \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday, and he's been in hospital \_\_\_\_\_ then.
11. Mustafa Kemal Atatürk and his friends founded the Turkish Republic \_\_\_\_\_ 1923, and Turkey has been a republic \_\_\_\_\_ that time.
12. A: She has been miserable \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday. Do you know why?  
B: Well, she applied for a job a few days \_\_\_\_\_, and she expected an answer yesterday, but she hasn't heard from the company \_\_\_\_\_.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ 1986, the space shuttle *Challenger* exploded, and all seven people on board were killed.
14. Someone called you \_\_\_\_\_ around 4 o'clock, just after you left.

**3**

Rewrite the sentences using "*since*" and "*for*". Use the words given in parentheses.

e.g. I last saw Jim in January. (*see*)  
I haven't seen Jim since January.

I bought this jumper two weeks ago. (*have*)  
I've had this jumper for two weeks.

1. You started this school three months ago. (*be*)  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. They last visited us on Saturday. (*visit*)  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. She last wrote to me two years ago. (*write*)  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. I first met Sally in January 1980. (*know*)  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. They moved to the USA in 1985. (*live*)  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. I last went abroad about ten years ago. (*be*)  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. We arrived here more than half an hour ago. (*wait*)  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. They first noticed the problem yesterday. (*know about*)  
\_\_\_\_\_

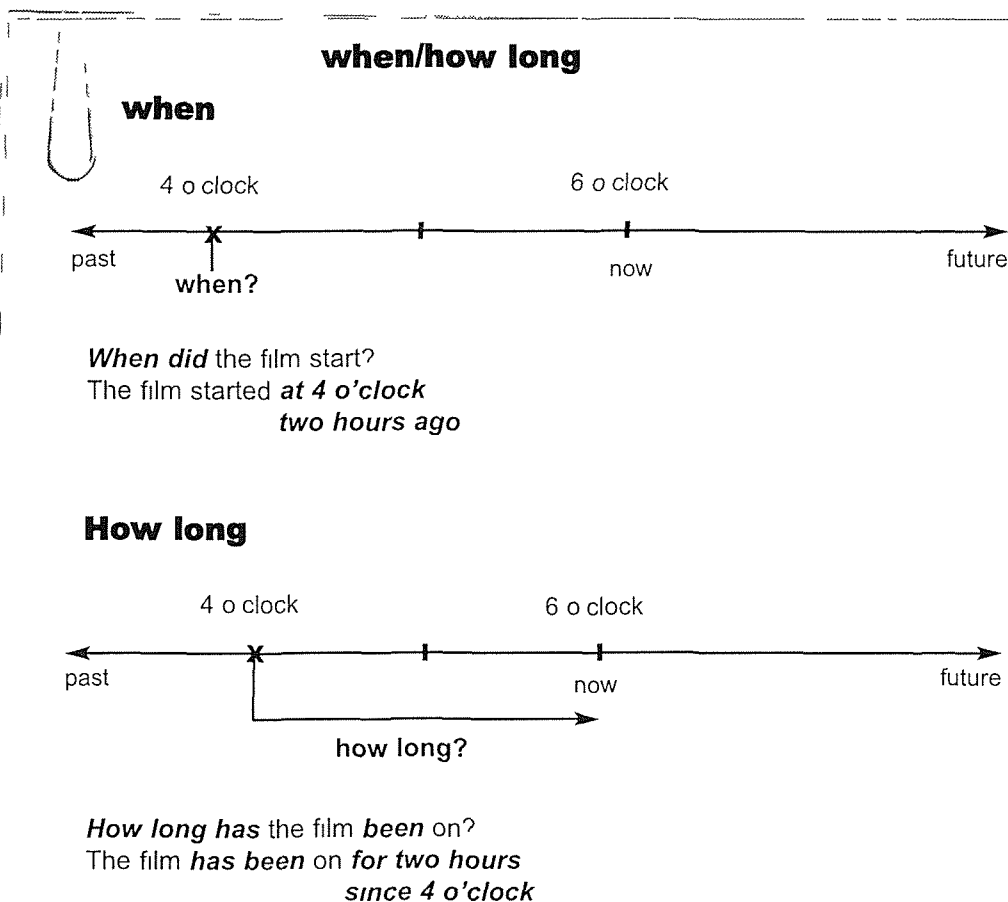
4

Rewrite the sentences with *in, on, at* or *ago* using the words in parentheses.

e.g This house has belonged to my parents for ten years (*buy*)  
My parents bought this house ten years ago

1. She hasn't painted a picture for years (*last/paint*)
2. I've taught this class since the beginning of this term (*start teaching*)
3. She has been a mother for just two hours (*become*)
4. Mary has attended this course since September (*start*)
5. I've had this watch since Wednesday (*buy*)
6. She hasn't phoned me since 3 o'clock (*last/phone*)
7. I've been in this job for eleven years (*start*)
8. The Prime Minister has been in Istanbul since Monday morning (*come*)

Study the table.



5

Ask questions with "when" or "how long" using the given words.

e.g. Mr. Harris/be/the manager

A: How long has Mr. Harris been the manager?

B: Since the company started, I think.

1. your brother/take his driving test

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: About two weeks ago.

2. you/have that teacher

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: Since the beginning of term.

3. you/start learning English

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: At the beginning of this term.

4. dinosaurs/disappear from the earth

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: I don't know. Millions of years ago, I think.

5. this government/be/in power

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: For six months, I think.

6. Alexander Fleming/discover/penicillin

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: In 1928.

7. you/know Matthew

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: Since he was a child.

8. there/be life on earth

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: For about 350 million years.

6

Use the present perfect or the simple past of the verbs in parentheses.

e.g. A: Have you ever won (ever, win) a prize in a competition?

B: Yes, I won (win) a £10 prize in a drawing competition when I was (be) in primary school.

1. A: When \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (last, go) to the theatre?

B: I \_\_\_\_\_ (never, go) to the theatre in my life!

2. A: What time \_\_\_\_\_ the party \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) last night?

B: About 2 o'clock, but a lot of people \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) earlier than that.

3. A: How many times \_\_\_\_\_ she \_\_\_\_\_ (take) her driving test so far?

B: Three, and she \_\_\_\_\_ (not, pass) it yet!

4. She \_\_\_\_\_ (be) late for work three times so far this week.

5. He \_\_\_\_\_ (never, ride) a horse, but he \_\_\_\_\_ (go) for a ride on a camel when

he \_\_\_\_\_ (be) on holiday in Egypt last summer.

6. A couple of weeks ago, I \_\_\_\_\_ (try) Japanese food for the first time and I

\_\_\_\_\_ (love) it!

7. I \_\_\_\_\_ (telephone) him twice so far this week, and on both occasions, he \_\_\_\_\_

(not, be) at home.

8. A: \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (see) Brad Pitt's latest film yet?

B: Yes, we \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to see it on Saturday night.

9. Pamela \_\_\_\_\_ (give) me a beautiful jumper for my birthday, but I \_\_\_\_\_

(not, have) an opportunity to wear it yet.

10. A: When \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_ (*move*) overseas?  
 B: He \_\_\_\_\_ (*leave*) his job in August last year and then he \_\_\_\_\_ (*move*) in September.
11. A: \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (*read*) any good books recently?  
 B: Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*read*) a really exciting detective novel about two weeks ago.
12. My grandmother \_\_\_\_\_ (*never, be*) in a plane; in fact, I don't think she \_\_\_\_\_ (*ever, be*) on a train, either. She doesn't like travelling away from home.
13. A: \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) Jill recently?  
 B: Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) her at Sally's party on Saturday.
14. A: How long \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) in this city, Jake?  
 B: Well, my parents \_\_\_\_\_ (*move*) here when I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) only two, so that makes it a little more than twenty years.
15. We \_\_\_\_\_ (*not, have*) any snow so far this winter, but it \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) rather cold from time to time.
16. There \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) many improvements in the field of medicine recently.
17. A: Is dinner ready? I'm starving. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not, eat*) anything since this morning.  
 B: Why? Were you busy today?  
 A: Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) three interviews in the morning, and they \_\_\_\_\_ (*last*) until 12.30. Then, at 1 o'clock, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*attend*) a meeting, and it \_\_\_\_\_ (*not, finish*) until 4 o'clock, so I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not, have*) any time for lunch.
18. A: Let's go to the cinema tonight. We \_\_\_\_\_ (*not, go*) to the cinema for ages.  
 B: What a big lie! We \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to see *Babam ve Oğlum* just last week.

**7**

Complete the dialogue using the correct form of the verbs in parentheses: *simple past or present perfect*.

*(Samantha is in the bathroom and Paul is sitting in an armchair, reading the evening paper.)*

- Paul: Sam, (1) \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (*finish*) the washing-up yet?  
 Sam: (2) \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (*not, notice*) ? I (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (*finish*) it half an hour ago.  
 Paul: Half an hour ago? Oh!  
 Sam: I (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (*put on*) my new dress. Do you like it?

*(Sam comes into the room and tries to take the newspaper away.)*

- Paul: Sam! I (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (*not, read*) the sports section yet. Oh! Why (6) \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (*put on*) your new dress?  
 Sam: I'd like to go out.  
 Paul: I (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (*not, relax*) all day. Must we really go out?  
 Sam: Paul, darling, you're terrible.  
 Paul: Where do you want to go, anyway?  
 Sam: Let's go to a nice restaurant.  
 Paul: But we (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (*just, have*) dinner. How about going to a pub?  
 Sam: No, I don't like pubs. We (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to your favourite pub last Friday, don't you remember? A lot of your friends (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) there, and you (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (*only, speak*) a few words to me all night. Let's do something different for a change and go to a dance club. We (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (*not, go*) to a dance club since we (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) married.  
 Paul: Oh, no! I'm too tired for that.  
 Sam: How about the new George Clooney film then? We (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (*not, see*) it yet.  
 Paul: Must we go to the cinema? Let's stay at home and watch TV.  
 Sam: Oh, Paul. It's our wedding anniversary today, and you (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (*forget*) it again!

# UNIT 10

## REVISION OF TENSES

### Use:

1. **The Present Continuous Tense** to express actions happening at the time of speaking:

Don't speak so loudly. The baby **is sleeping**.  
Can you help me? I'm **having** difficulty moving this sofa.

2. **The Simple Present Tense** to talk about habits and general activities:

My mum **never allows** me to go to school without having a proper breakfast.  
We **spend** our holiday in the south **every year**.

3. **The Simple Past Tense** to talk about actions that happened at a definite time in the past:

We **moved** to Istanbul **ten years ago**.  
I **didn't see** Tom yesterday.

4. **The Past Continuous Tense** to express actions happening at a certain point in the past:

(At) this time last year, he **was travelling** around France.  
The students **were chatting** noisily when the teacher came in.

5. **The Present Perfect Tense** to express actions starting in the past and continuing until the present, or to talk about past actions with present results without giving a definite time:

We **have owned** this car **since last year**.  
You can wear your blue dress to the party.  
I **have washed** and **ironed** it. (*It's ready to wear now.*)

6. **The Simple Future** to make predictions about the future or to express willingness:

Perhaps one day you'll **be** rich and buy an expensive car.  
A: I don't understand this formula.  
B: Don't worry. I'll **explain** it to you.

7. **"going to" future** to make predictions about future events with present evidence or to express future plans:

A: Look, Mr. Green is taking the hose out of the shed.  
B: Oh, he's **going to water** the lawn then.  
  
I've arranged everything for the picnic.  
We're **going to buy** the food and Tim **is going to get** the drinks.



**1** Rewrite the sentences using the given adverbs of time.

e.g. *these days*  
*recently*

She is working very hard these days.  
She has worked very hard recently.

1. *at the moment*  
a) *this time last year*  
b) *twice so far this year*  
c) *for a month next year*  
d) *for two weeks last summer*

She is staying with us at the moment.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

2. *tomorrow*  
a) *yesterday*  
b) *since last week*  
c) *very often these days*

I am not going to see him tomorrow.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. *now*  
a) *not/for ages*  
b) *when I left work*  
c) *for two days last week*

It is raining heavily now.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. *very often*  
a) *last week*  
b) *when I met you*  
c) *next week*  
d) *recently*

Do you go to the cinema very often?  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

5. *last month*  
a) *every month*  
b) *twice so far this month*  
c) *twice last month*  
d) *soon*  
e) *just*  
f) *not/yet*

She wrote to me last month.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

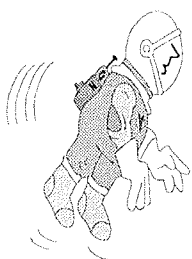
**2** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

- I \_\_\_\_\_ (*finish*) painting the living room, but I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not, do*) the kitchen yet.
- While he \_\_\_\_\_ (*work*) in the garden, he \_\_\_\_\_ (*find*) a nest of baby birds.
- A: When \_\_\_\_\_ you last \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to the hairdresser's?  
B: Oh, about three months ago.

4. Get off the phone! You \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) on it for the last hour.
5. A: How many times \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) on an airplane?  
B: Only once.
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not, have*) any time to go out these days because I \_\_\_\_\_ (*revise*) for my exams.
7. A: Can't you turn that music down?  
B: No, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*listen*) to it.
8. Usually, we \_\_\_\_\_ (*not, see*) each other during the week, but we \_\_\_\_\_ (*always, go*) out together on Saturdays.
9. This time last year, we \_\_\_\_\_ (*trek*) in the Himalayas.
10. How can you dislike Indian food? You \_\_\_\_\_ (*never, try*) it.
11. A: Why \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. O'Connor \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to Germany next week?  
B: He \_\_\_\_\_ (*attend*) a two-week training course there.
12. A: Oh, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) a terrible headache.  
B: Wait there. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*bring*) you an aspirin.
13. Since he \_\_\_\_\_ (*start*) working at that company, one year ago, he \_\_\_\_\_ (*save*) up over £5,000.
14. Oh, you \_\_\_\_\_ (*change*) your hair since I \_\_\_\_\_ (*last, see*) you. It \_\_\_\_\_ (*suit*) you.
15. He \_\_\_\_\_ (*lend*) her about £30 last week, but she \_\_\_\_\_ (*not, pay*) him back yet.
16. They \_\_\_\_\_ (*giggle*) while the teacher \_\_\_\_\_ (*speak*), so she \_\_\_\_\_ (*send*) them to see the head mistress.
17. Sometimes, he \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) really angry with everyone, but generally, we \_\_\_\_\_ (*enjoy*) working with him.
18. Don't disturb Jenny. She \_\_\_\_\_ (*prepare*) her thesis for her degree.
19. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*buy*) this jumper here last week, but now I \_\_\_\_\_ (*want*) to change it.
20. We \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) a picnic when the storm \_\_\_\_\_ (*start*), and we \_\_\_\_\_ (*not, have*) anywhere to shelter.
21. We \_\_\_\_\_ (*know*) each other since we \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) children. We \_\_\_\_\_ (*meet*) at primary school.
22. She \_\_\_\_\_ (*bang*) her head while she \_\_\_\_\_ (*dive*) into the swimming pool.
23. A: \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (*buy*) the tickets for the play yet?  
B: No, but I \_\_\_\_\_ (*reserve*) them yesterday, and tomorrow afternoon, Joe \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) them for us.
24. A: There \_\_\_\_\_ (*not, be*) any rain for a long time.  
B: No, and I'm afraid it \_\_\_\_\_ (*affect*) this year's crop.
25. A: Darling, can't we help Sarah with her problem?  
B: Well, what \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) her problem?  
A: She \_\_\_\_\_ (*want*) to buy a car but she \_\_\_\_\_ (*not, have*) enough money at the moment.  
B: Okay, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*talk*) to her tomorrow, and try to do something for her.

3

a) Complete the passage with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.



Astronomy is the oldest science in the world. Since ancient times, people (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (look) at the sky and (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (study) the stars and the planets. Long ago, before recorded history, people (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (begin) naming the groups of stars—what we (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (now, call) the constellations. In 1609, Galileo (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (build) the first astronomical telescope, and since then, we (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (develop) larger and better telescopes. We (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (also, travel) to our own Moon, and (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (send) space probes to the planets to study their atmospheres and surfaces. Nowadays, we (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (have) satellites and shuttles, with people living and working in them for months at a time, orbiting the Earth.

In 1957, the U.S.S.R. (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (launch) *Sputnik 1*, the first manmade satellite, and then in 1961, Soviet cosmonaut Yuri Gagarin (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (become) the first human to orbit Earth. But while the Soviets (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (do) all this, the Americans (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (race) to catch up, and in 1969, they (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (finally, do). The spacecraft *Apollo 11* (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (land) on the Moon and astronauts Neil Armstrong and Edwin Aldrin (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) on its surface—the first humans ever to do so.

But still the big question (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (remain) unanswered. Is there life on other planets? Since the 19th century, many people (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (believe) that there is, or was, life on Mars. And earlier this year, scientists in Britain (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (make) an exciting discovery. About twenty years ago, a meteorite from Mars (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (fall) to Earth. Recently, scientists (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (find) that samples from this meteorite (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (contain) small amounts of carbon—the essential element for life. So now, these scientists (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (carry) out further tests to try to prove their theory that Mars can support life.

And what of the future? Many people (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (think) that there is clear evidence that the world (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (soon, be) too polluted and too crowded for us to live on any more. They are certain that one day, we (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (have to) find new places to live, and they (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (believe) that these places (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (be) in space.



b) Ask and answer the questions according to the passage.

- e.g. how long/people/be interested in the stars  
How long have people been interested in the stars? Since ancient times.
1. when/people/start naming the groups of stars  
 \_\_\_\_\_
  2. what/we/call/these groups of stars/now  
 \_\_\_\_\_
  3. who/build/the first astronomical telescope  
 \_\_\_\_\_
  4. when/he/build it  
 \_\_\_\_\_
  5. why/we/send so many space probes to the planets  
 \_\_\_\_\_
  6. whose astronauts/first/walk on the Moon—the Americans' or the Soviets'  
 \_\_\_\_\_
  7. people/find life on other planets/so far  
 \_\_\_\_\_
  8. there/be/any cities/in space/now  
 \_\_\_\_\_

- 4** a) Complete the story using the appropriate verb tense: *Present Simple, Present Continuous, Past Simple, Past Continuous, or Present Perfect* for the verb in parentheses; some blanks have more than one possible answer.

Mathilde (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) down the street one day when she (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) an extraordinary sight: an old man (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (*walk*) a lobster on a leash. Surprised, Mathilde said to herself: "Hmm, I (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (*not see*) anything like this before. I wonder where this strange man (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*)." She was curious, so she (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (*decide*) to follow the man. While she (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (*follow*) him, she (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (*notice*) that his clothes were quite strange as well. He (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (*wear*) a very tall purple silk hat, a purple tuxedo, and tight purple velvet trousers. When Mathilde (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (*look*) closer, she (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) that the lobster, too, (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) a very small tuxedo on its hard shell.

Mathilde (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (*continue*) to follow the man and his lobster for some time. Finally, they (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (*sit*) down together in a small café by the seaside. The man gently (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (*place*) the lobster on the table and (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (*order*) a cappuccino. While the surprised waiter (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (*run*) to get the man's drink, Mathilde (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (*sit*) down at the table across from the man. Suddenly, the man (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (*speak*) to Mathilde:

"Probably, right now you (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (*ask*) yourself, 'Why (21) \_\_\_\_\_ this man \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) a lobster on a leash?'," he said. "Correct?"

"Umm ... yes, actually," Mathilde answered nervously.

"The reason is very simple. This lobster—his name is Felix—(22) \_\_\_\_\_ (*serve*) as my only friend for the last 20 years. When I (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (*find*) him on the seaside a short time after my wife (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (*die*), he (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (*die*). So I (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) him home and (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (*nurse*) him back to health, and ever since then he (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (*follow*) me around faithfully."

"But doesn't he need ocean water?"

"Of course, my dear! At home, I (29) \_\_\_\_\_ (*keep*) him in a large saltwater aquarium. But every three days, I (30) \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) him out for a walk so that he can take the air of the lovely city of Marseilles."

"I see," said Mathilde. "Can I ask you another question?"

"Of course, my dear!"

"Why (31) \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (*name*) your lobster Felix?"

"The reason is very simple. I (32) \_\_\_\_\_ (*name*) him Felix because I (33) \_\_\_\_\_ (*not want*) to name him Jedediah. Think about it, my dear—the name 'Jedediah' (34) \_\_\_\_\_ (*sound*) terrible!"

"Umm ... I guess so," answered Mathilde.

At that moment, the waiter (35) \_\_\_\_\_ (*bring*) the strange man's cappuccino. While he (36) \_\_\_\_\_ (*drink*) it, Felix (37) \_\_\_\_\_ (*begin*) to snap his claws.

"Oh look!" smiled the man. "You (38) \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) hungry! Let's fix that, shall we?"

And the man (39) \_\_\_\_\_ (*pull*) from the inside pocket of his purple tuxedo a small anchovy. He (40) \_\_\_\_\_ (*dangle*) the little fish above Felix, and then Felix (41) \_\_\_\_\_ (*pull*) it down beneath him and (42) \_\_\_\_\_ (*begin*) to tear the fish apart with his claws and front legs. While he (43) \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) this, the table (44) \_\_\_\_\_ (*become*) very messy.

At this point, the waiter (45) \_\_\_\_\_ (*come*) over to the table. "Excuse me, sir," he said nervously, "I'm sorry, but the manager (46) \_\_\_\_\_ just \_\_\_\_\_ (*tell*) me that you must leave."

"Of course, of course," answered the man calmly. He (47) \_\_\_\_\_ (*pick*) up Felix and (48) \_\_\_\_\_ (*start*) to go while he (49) \_\_\_\_\_ (*hold*) the lobster in his arms.


"Wait!" (50) \_\_\_\_\_ (*cry*) Mathilde. "What's your name?"

"Jedediah," was the answer.

**b) Answer the questions about the story.**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Where does this story take place?    | 6. When did Jedediah's wife die?       |
| 2. Why did Mathilde follow Jedediah?    | 7. How long has Jedediah had Felix?    |
| 3. What clothes did Jedediah have on?   | 8. Why was the lobster's name Felix?   |
| 4. Where were Jedediah and Felix going? | 9. What did Jedediah feed Felix?       |
| 5. What did Jedediah order?             | 10. Who said that Jedediah must leave? |

study the box.



**Questions with “who”**

Use the third person singular form of the verb with **who** when asking for the subject.

- Who **is** going to help you?
- Jane and Mary.
  
- Who **answers** the phone in the office?
- Henry or Peter.
  
- Who **has** broken this vase?
- I don't know.

**5** Ask questions about the words in bold type.

e.g. Mary took **Susan** to the airport.  
Who did Mary take to the airport?

1. **My parents** have travelled a lot.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. She has phoned us **only once** so far this month.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. I'm going to the shops **to get some milk**.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. They stayed in Zürich **for ten days**.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. She has worked with us **since last year**.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Alice wants to use **the new** computer.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. They paid **\$100,000** for that car.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. The manager has a meeting with the staff **every two weeks**.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. **The Browns** are going to visit us tomorrow.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. I'm going to help **Mary** with the housework.  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. There will be **more than twenty** people at the party.  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. I last went to the theatre **two years ago**.  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. Harry drove the car **very carefully**.  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. She put the sofa **between the fireplace and the door**.  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. Sally lost **her brother's** dictionary.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Study the box.**

**"For" with Different Tenses**

Use *since* only with the perfect tenses.

She *has been* ill *since last week*.

I *haven't seen* him *since he left here*.

You can use *for* with the following tenses to express a duration.

Every day, she *studies* at the library *for three hours*.

She *is going* to the library *for three hours*.

She *is going to study* at the library *for three hours*.

She *will stay* at the library *for three hours*.

She *has been* at the library *for three hours*.

She *studied* at the library *for three hours*.

**6** Read the sentences and choose the right answer.

e.g. John has lived here for ten years.

- a) He now lives elsewhere.
- ✓ b) He still lives here.

1. You know my friend Harry. He smoked heavily for fifteen years.
  - a) He doesn't smoke any more.
  - b) He still smokes heavily.
2. Jennifer is going to Stockholm for two days next week.
  - a) She has been in Stockholm for two days.
  - b) She isn't in Stockholm at the moment.
3. I studied at the library for two hours yesterday.
  - a) Yesterday, I spent two hours at the library.
  - b) I left the library at 2 o'clock yesterday.
4. The students have been in the laboratory since 2 o'clock.
  - a) They have been in the laboratory for two hours.
  - b) They went into the laboratory at 2 o'clock.
5. She worked with us for ten years.
  - a) She still works with us.
  - b) She doesn't work with us any more.
6. Alice started working here ten years ago.
  - a) She has been with this firm for ten years.
  - b) She worked here for ten years.
7. Jeremy is leaving Paris tomorrow for a two-week holiday in Italy.
  - a) Jeremy is in Paris at the moment.
  - b) He has been in Italy for two weeks.

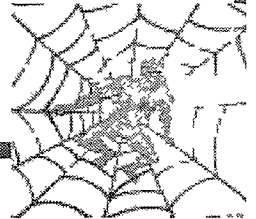
7 Read the passage below and then write T (True) or F (False) for the following statements.



**Spider-Man**

While Peter Parker's parents were flying on a plane, it exploded and they died. Peter went and lived with his uncle and aunt. Peter was a very clever student, but nobody in his class liked him. When he was 15 years old, his life changed. While a spider was moving around in a laboratory, a nuclear ray hit it. Later, when Peter was visiting the laboratory, the spider bit him. The spider bite gave Peter special spider-like powers. Peter became aware of his new powers when he was climbing up a wall. Once, while Peter was watching a thief, he didn't stop him, and this thief later killed his uncle. Peter found this out and felt responsible.

Since that moment, Peter has devoted his life to fighting crime. He attends school during the day, and protects the people of New York at night as Spider-Man. Not everybody likes Spider-Man. He has many enemies. For example, the Green Goblin has attacked him many times. The Daily Bugle newspaper prints bad stories about him. Later in his life, he is going to become a science teacher at his old school. Also, he is going to marry his sweetheart Mary Jane Watson.



- \_\_\_ 1. Peter Parker got his powers when he was a teenager
- \_\_\_ 2. Peter Parker's parents died when they were in the air
- \_\_\_ 3. Peter Parker has stopped his education and now catches criminals
- \_\_\_ 4. The Green Goblin has tried to hurt Peter Parker more than once
- \_\_\_ 5. Peter Parker was a crime fighter, but now he is a science teacher
- \_\_\_ 6. Nobody likes Spider-Man
- \_\_\_ 7. Peter Parker caused the death of his uncle
- \_\_\_ 8. Mary Jane Watson is Peter Parker's wife
- \_\_\_ 9. The Green Goblin is still alive
- \_\_\_ 10. A nuclear ray hit Peter Parker in the laboratory

b) Answer the following questions according to the passage.

- 1. Why did Peter Parker live with his uncle and aunt?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2. When was the spider struck by a nuclear ray?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3. Who murdered Peter Parker's uncle?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4. How did Peter Parker react to his uncle's death?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5. Where do negative articles about Spider-Man appear?  
\_\_\_\_\_

## REVISION TEST 2

### Units 1-10

1. When Felix was in Peru, he ..... the famous Incan city of Machu Picchu.
- A) sees                      B) has seen  
C) is seeing                D) saw
2. In 2005, Alain Robert climbed ..... a 282-metre-high building in Hong Kong.
- A) towards                 B) up  
C) along                     D) at
3. Dorina hasn't seen her family in Romania ..... a long time.
- A) for                        B) since  
C) yet                        D) already
4. I don't have ..... nice to say to Calvin because I don't like him.
- A) someone                B) something  
C) anything                 D) no one
5. My alarm clock ..... off at 6.30 in the morning, but today it ..... a sound.
- A) went/didn't make  
B) goes/hasn't made  
C) will go/isn't going to make  
D) was going/doesn't make
6. I haven't been to the Picasso exhibition ....., but I'm planning to go tomorrow.
- A) yet                        B) already  
C) since                     D) for
7. Elizabeth: ..... took the teacher's book from my desk?  
Ralph: I think Lisa did.
- A) Who                        B) When  
C) Where                     D) Whose
8. Mr. Desconocido is very strange. At 3 o'clock last night, he ..... his car.
- A) will clean  
B) has cleaned  
C) is cleaning  
D) was cleaning
9. Bronwen ..... that she ..... hard for next Monday's chemistry test.
- A) has decided/is going to study  
B) decides/will study  
C) will decide/is studying  
D) is deciding/has studied
10. The spacecraft *Apollo 13* was travelling to the Moon from the Earth ..... a problem occurred.
- A) already                    B) since  
C) when                      D) while
11. This train will arrive in Budapest soon, .....?
- A) will it                      B) won't it  
C) doesn't it                 D) does it
12. It is raining and Zoe is standing ..... the building. She has become very wet.
- A) down                      B) towards  
C) through                    D) outside
13. Ivan: I'm waiting for an important letter, but I must go to work now.  
Eva: It's not a problem. .... here for you.
- A) I stay  
B) I'm going to stay  
C) I have stayed  
D) I'll stay



14. Deacon ..... two and a half large pizzas, so he ..... ill this afternoon.

- A) eats/will feel
- B) has eaten/is going to feel
- C) will eat/is feeling
- D) is eating/felt

15. .... has escaped from the office, but I think there is ..... still in the elevator.

- A) No one/anyone
- B) Anyone/somewhere
- C) Everyone/someone
- D) Anywhere/anything

16. I ..... that newsreader on the TV many times, but I still don't know her name.

- A) have seen
- B) see
- C) am seeing
- D) saw

17. Dylan: ..... did Raphael paint his picture *The School of Athens*?

Tania: Five hundred years ago.

- A) When
- B) Who
- C) How long
- D) How many

18. Imelda has ..... seen *The Matrix*, so let's choose a different film.

- A) since
- B) yet
- C) ever
- D) already

19. I ..... a book on astronomy. I ..... it out of the library three days ago.

- A) will read/was taking
- B) read/have taken
- C) am reading/took
- D) have read/take

20. Özgür has lived in Ankara ..... he was a child, but his family is going to move soon.

- A) from
- B) since
- C) for
- D) while

21. David ran ..... the door and accidentally knocked an old man over.

- A) over
- B) through
- C) across
- D) on

22. Light travels at a speed of 300,000 kilometres a second, .....?

- A) doesn't it
- B) isn't it
- C) does it
- D) is it

23. Our shop ..... three washing-machines since last weekend.

- A) is selling
- B) has sold
- C) sold
- D) was selling

24. Sonia: ..... wrote the book *Crime and Punishment*?

Rodion: I think Fyodor Dostoyevsky did.

- A) Why
- B) How
- C) Who
- D) Whose

25. The cheetah is very quietly moving ..... the zebra.

- A) towards
- B) into
- C) across
- D) through

26. Beth: ..... you ..... medicine at university?

Nathan: I don't know.

- A) Have/studied
- B) Are/studying
- C) Do/study
- D) Will/study

27. Pelin ..... dinner with us tomorrow evening, so I ..... some mutton this morning.

- A) has/have bought
- B) is going to have/buy
- C) will have/was buying
- D) is having/bought

28. Salvador: Why don't you finish your homework this morning?

Veronica: Because I've ..... done it.

- A) yet
- B) already
- C) since
- D) ever

29. We lost our football because it rolled ..... the hill and into the sea.

- A) down
- B) outside
- C) up
- D) through

30. Frederick has ..... sent a text message from his mobile phone.

- A) ever
- B) since
- C) yet
- D) never

31. While Nazif ..... a *Star Wars* film on VCD, he ..... a loud noise from the kitchen.

- A) will watch/will hear
- B) watched/is hearing
- C) was watching/heard
- D) has watched/hears

32. Usually on Sundays, James ..... basketball in the park, but today he ..... his grandmother in hospital.

- A) plays/is visiting
- B) played/will visit
- C) has played/visits
- D) will play/has visited

33. Robert: Have you ..... read *The Outsiders* by S. E. Hinton?

Darrell: No, but I would like to.

- A) yet
- B) once
- C) ever
- D) since

34. Kieran smelt ..... unusual on the bus and became worried.

- A) nowhere
- B) anyone
- C) something
- D) anywhere

35. Edna: ..... has Beijing been the capital of China?

Flora: For six hundred years.

- A) Why
- B) How long
- C) When
- D) How many

36. Erdal dropped his wallet ..... he was getting off the bus.

- A) already
- B) since
- C) from
- D) while

37. Sevim hasn't seen the new elephant in the zoo .....

- A) yet
- B) already
- C) since
- D) ever

38. There is nothing ..... my suitcase. It is completely empty.

- A) outside
- B) inside
- C) into
- D) down

39. We are going ..... for a picnic, but ..... has told me the name of the place.

- A) anything/nowhere
- B) everything/someone
- C) anywhere/anything
- D) somewhere/no one

40. Orlando has ..... come home from work. He's in the shower at the moment.

- A) just
- B) ever
- C) yet
- D) since

## TEST YOUR VOCABULARY 2

1. Rebecca is very ..... . She doesn't study, but she always takes top marks.
- A) average                      B) clever  
C) serious                      D) useful
2. Yaprak: Are you .....you saw Melih on the ferry?  
Aydan: No, but I think it was him.
- A) sure                          B) safe  
C) real                          D) glad
3. Matthias was ..... the bank when the masked robbers shot him in the head.
- A) dying                        B) surrounding  
C) guarding                    D) feeling
4. The chairman ..... supported his manager when the matches were going badly.
- A) shortly                      B) easily  
C) faithfully                    D) equally
5. The Bengal famine of 1943 was ..... . Over three million people lost their lives because of it.
- A) depressed                  B) terrible  
C) troubled                    D) careful
6. Şebnem ..... the smoke in the corridor and immediately phoned for the fire brigade.
- A) invited                      B) suspected  
C) gathered                    D) noticed
7. The answer is ..... C. I have no doubt about it at all.
- A) definitely                  B) probably  
C) extremely                  D) successfully
8. Ricardo always leaves his clothes on the floor and he never puts his CDs away. He is very ..... .
- A) messy                        B) guilty  
C) disgusted                    D) aimless
9. One of the most important ..... in modern Lebanon was the civil war of 1975–1990.
- A) opinions                    B) escapes  
C) events                        D) victories
10. Jonathan became ..... when he saw the spider moving towards him.
- A) slimy                         B) scared  
C) innocent                    D) bloody
11. Every time the tram gets to Aksaray, it is very ....., so it is difficult to get on it.
- A) occupied                    B) doubtful  
C) shut                          D) crowded
12. Somebody in this room committed the ..... . I just don't know who.
- A) crime                         B) occurrence  
C) absence                      D) idea
13. Müge has decorated her house very ..... . I think her living room is especially beautiful.
- A) fortunately                B) tastefully  
C) politely                      D) annually
14. I'm not buying anything from Serhat again. He has ..... the prices of his pistachio nuts for the second time this month!
- A) climbed                      B) raised  
C) traded                        D) desired
15. Some people believe that Napoléon ..... from his imprisonment on the island of Saint Helena.
- A) poisoned                    B) murdered  
C) escaped                        D) found
16. Marisol thinks that Justin is very ....., but Lorraine thinks that he is ugly.
- A) handsome                  B) broad  
C) skinny                        D) hopeful
17. The democracies of today don't ..... those of the ancient world.
- A) look                          B) resemble  
C) elect                         D) function
18. We had a ..... dinner at your house last night. Your cooking is really good.
- A) bright                        B) greasy  
C) kind                          D) wonderful

19. Most of the classical Greek temples ..... east towards the rising sun.

- A) faced                      B) performed  
C) prayed                     D) travelled

20. In 2004, the Japanese man Takeru Kobayashi ..... to eat 53½ hotdogs in just twelve minutes.

- A) believed                  B) managed  
C) collected                 D) indicated

21. According to the ..... of my neighbours, Ferhat is going to ask Şirin to marry him.

- A) gossip                     B) language  
C) movement                D) location

22. Gavin was ..... when he saw his old grandmother beating up the postman.

- A) splendid                  B) different  
C) surprised                 D) foolish

23. The lions ..... the tourists away from the lake.

- A) fed                         B) continued  
C) chased                     D) jumped

24. Lydia liked *Pride and Prejudice*, but I ..... it very boring.

- A) discovered               B) found  
C) read                        D) understood

25. When Joshua got near his office building, he ..... that it was a national holiday that day.

- A) selected                  B) informed  
C) respected                 D) realized

26. I didn't believe William's ..... story, but actually it was true.

- A) extraordinary            B) invented  
C) tight                        D) dishonest

27. You haven't opened the letter from Ophelia. Aren't you ..... about her feelings for you?

- A) envious                    B) curious  
C) selfish                     D) pleasant

28. Qin Shi Huang was ..... for the unification of China into one single empire.

- A) courageous              B) responsible  
C) wealthy                    D) enormous

29. Conrad ..... entered the tiger's cage on his first morning of work at the zoo.

- A) essentially                B) daily  
C) fortunately               D) nervously

30. It took me six hours to find a ..... to that mathematics problem.

- A) memory                    B) space  
C) solution                    D) calculator

31. Italy and Britain fought on the same side in the First World War, but they were ..... in the Second World War.

- A) parts                        B) enemies  
C) hatreds                     D) weapons

32. I think that medieval buildings are very beautiful, but that most modern ones are just ..... .

- A) plain                        B) clear  
C) ripe                         D) real

33. After the motorcycle accident, we saw that Carrie was ..... very badly, so we took her to the hospital.

- A) bleeding                  B) dying  
C) breaking                  D) putting

34. Rodney keeps all of his important documents and most of his money in his ..... .

- A) mind                        B) security  
C) risk                         D) safe

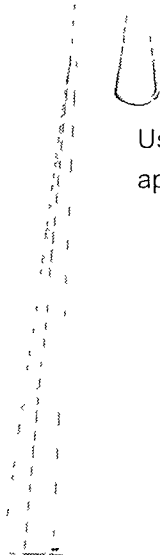
35. When Charles said that Luther's idea was ....., he was very upset.

- A) shy                         B) bored  
C) silly                        D) busy

# UNIT 11

## Describing People and Places

Study the box.



### What do/does ... look like?

Use *what do/does ... look like?* when you want to learn about someone's appearance.

- *What does* your flatmate *look like?*
- Sue? She's very pretty, with long blonde hair and blue eyes.
  
- I haven't met the new manager yet. *What does* he *look like?*
- Well, he's quite tall and well-built. He's got fair hair and brown eyes. He's quite handsome, I think

**1** Group the following adjectives under the correct headings.

|                      |                 |                   |              |                        |
|----------------------|-----------------|-------------------|--------------|------------------------|
| <i>green</i>         | <i>slim</i>     | <i>well-built</i> | <i>short</i> | <i>shoulder-length</i> |
| <i>medium height</i> | <i>fair</i>     | <i>tall</i>       | <i>fat</i>   | <i>long</i>            |
| <i>dark</i>          | <i>wavy</i>     | <i>curly</i>      | <i>hazel</i> | <i>short</i>           |
| <i>blue</i>          | <i>straight</i> | <i>red</i>        |              |                        |

a) height

---

---

---

b) build

---

---

---

c) hair length

---

---

---

d) hair colour

---

---

---

e) hair type

---

---

---

f) eye colour

---

---

---

2

Describe the hair of these people using the words in the box.



straight  
long  
curly

dark  
fair  
shoulder-length

short  
wavy

red  
grey

1. She's got shoulder-length straight fair hair.



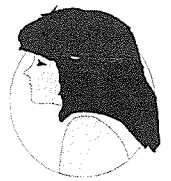
2. \_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_\_\_



4. \_\_\_\_\_

5. \_\_\_\_\_



6. \_\_\_\_\_

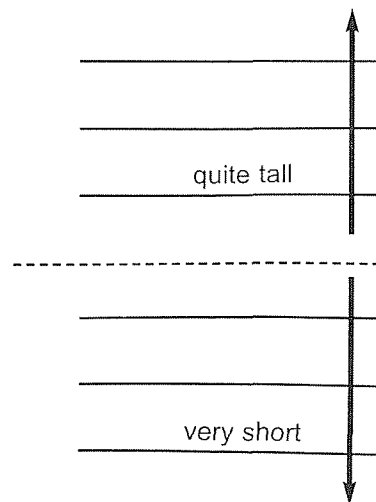
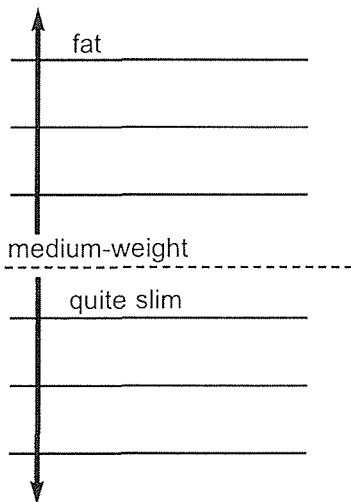
3

Complete the table showing heights and weights using the adjectives in the list.

- quite overweight
- medium-height
- quite short
- quite slim
- quite tall

- medium-weight
- very short
- very tall
- very slim
- overweight

- fat
- tall
- short
- slim



4 Using the information given, write descriptions about these people.

|        | Susan                       | Christine        | Tom               | Steven                  |
|--------|-----------------------------|------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|
| height | 1 metre 57 cms              | 1 metre 75 cms   | 1 metre 86 cms    | 1 metre 94 cms          |
| weight | 62 kilos                    | 59 kilos         | 76 kilos          | 80 kilos                |
| hair   | shoulder-length, red, curly | long, fair, wavy | long, dark, curly | short, blonde, straight |
| eyes   | blue                        | hazel            | green             | brown                   |


1. Tom is tall — 1 metre 86 cms — and he is very well-built. He's got long dark curly hair and green eyes.

2. Susan \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. Christine \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. Steven \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Study the box.**



**What's ... like?**

Use *what's ... like?* when you want to learn about people's personalities or about places and things.

— *What's* your new boss *like* Sally?  
— Oh, he is a nice person, I think. He seems very understanding.

— Have you ever been to Bodrum?  
— Yes, many times.  
— *What's* it *like*?  
— It's a lovely town, but very crowded in summer.

5

Isabella is a Spanish girl working for a family as an au pair in Swanage, a small town on the south coast of England. She's writing to her pen pal, Sheila, in Australia.

Dear Sheila,

Well, here I am in Swanage, England. It's a very nice little town on the south coast. I'm working for a family called the Johnsons. They are very nice and very kind to me. Mr. and Mrs. Johnson are quite young, so they enjoy the same music as me. They've got two children. William is four and he's always in trouble. He has beautiful fair hair and blue eyes, but he's very noisy and energetic. Claire, the baby, is very sweet. She sleeps most of the time and never cries.

Swanage is very pretty. There are lots of lovely stone houses and cottages, and there's a pond with ducks on it. The town is by the sea, but you can't swim in it. It's freezing! A lot of tourists come here at weekends, so then it's very lively. The weather isn't very good—not like Spain—but it isn't too cold.

The area round Swanage is very green, so I go walking across the fields and along the cliffs every day.

One thing is a problem—the food! It's so boring! I miss my mother's cooking. But sometimes we go to the local fish restaurant, and then it's fine.

How's my English? I think it's getting much better, isn't it?  
Anyway, write soon.

Love

Isabella

Answer the following questions according to Isabella's letter.

1. Where is Swanage?

---

2. What's Isabella doing in Swanage?

---

3. What's Swanage like?

---

4. What are the Johnsons like?

---

5. What's William like?

---

6. What's Claire like?

---

7. What's the sea like in Swanage?

---

8. What's Swanage like at the weekends?

---

9. What's the weather like in Swanage?

---

10. Does Isabella like the food in England?

---



6

*At the moment, Sally is at Sue's party. She's finding the party very interesting because there are guests from other countries. Sue has just introduced Sally to Yoko, a Japanese girl. Sally doesn't know much about Japan and Japanese people, so she's asking Yoko lots of questions.*

Sally: Which city are you from, Yoko?

Yoko: My family and I live in Tokyo now, but we're from Kyoto.

Sally: Kyoto? I've never heard of it.

Yoko: Yes, hundreds of years ago, it was the capital, but now, of course, Tokyo is.

Sally: Is Kyoto a nice city?

Yoko: Yes, I think so. It's much smaller than Tokyo, and more traditional, with old-style buildings—Tokyo is very modern, you know—and it's cleaner and quieter.

Sally: Is Tokyo noisy then?

Yoko: Oh yes. It's very crowded and busy. More than twelve million people live there, but it isn't really big enough, so accommodation is hard to find, and very expensive.

Everything's expensive, actually. Except electrical goods, of course.

Sally: Of course! What about clothes? You're wearing the same as me—jeans and a shirt. Don't people wear traditional clothes?

Yoko: Not in the cities. The kimonos, for women, are beautiful, but they're long and tight and not practical for daily wear. But we sometimes dress up for special occasions.

Sally: Yes, of course. Where did you go to school, Yoko?

Yoko: In Tokyo.

Sally: Did you enjoy it?

Yoko: Yes, but Japanese schools are different from European schools. We attend from Monday to Saturday, and during the holidays, we go back to school to go to clubs.

Sally: Gosh!

Yoko: And in the class, the students are very quiet. We believe it's rude to make a noise or nod our heads, so we don't speak—except when the teacher asks a question. And then, we only speak if we're certain of the answer.

Sally: Wow! That's really different!

Yoko: Yes. Sally, have you ever eaten Japanese food?

Sally: I've eaten Chinese food. Is it the same?

Yoko: Yes and no! We eat lots of rice and use soy sauce, but in other ways, it's different.

Sally: What's the most famous dish?

Yoko: Probably for Western people, sushi is.

Sally: Sushi. What's that?

Yoko: It's raw fish served on rice.

Sally: Raw? Yuk!

Yoko: Actually, it's delicious. You must try it. And we eat lots of other fish and lots of vegetables, too. We eat seaweed, you know.

Sally: Is that delicious, too?

Yoko: Yes, but the cooking must be right. You see, Japan isn't only one country. It's a chain of more than three thousand islands, so we take a lot of food from the sea.

Sally: It sounds very healthy.

Yoko: Yes, it's one of the healthiest diets in the world. And we don't drink milk or eat other dairy products. People say that's why the Japanese are so small, but I don't know if that's true!

Sally: Neither do I! I'd love to try your food.

Yoko: Well, come for dinner with me next week.

Sally: Oh, can I? Thanks very much.

Write questions for the answers using the information in the dialogue.

- |            |                               |  |
|------------|-------------------------------|--|
| e.g. _____ | <i>What's the party like?</i> | It's very interesting.                                     |
| 1. _____   |                               | In Tokyo.  |
| 2. _____   |                               | Kyoto.   |
| 3. _____   |                               | It's a nice city.  |
| 4. _____   |                               | Noisy, crowded, and busy.                                  |
| 5. _____   |                               | It's difficult to find and very expensive.                 |
| 6. _____   |                               | They are long and tight, and not practical for daily wear. |
| 7. _____   |                               | From Monday to Saturday.                                   |
| 8. _____   |                               | They are very quiet.                                       |
| 9. _____   |                               | Because they believe it's rude to make a noise.            |
| 10. _____  |                               | It's sushi.  |
| 11. _____  |                               | It's delicious.  |
| 12. _____  |                               | They are very small.                                       |

**7**

Complete the sentences with the correct form of *be like*:  
*is/are like, was/were like, will be like.*

1. A: What will the football match be like tomorrow?  
B: Very difficult, I think. Our players must put in a lot of effort.
2. A: What \_\_\_\_\_ your hotel \_\_\_\_\_ at the conference?  
B: Marvellous! We had a beautiful suite, and the staff looked after us very well.
3. A: What \_\_\_\_\_ Jack's new flat \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: Not bad! There aren't many rooms, but Jack prefers smaller places.
4. A: I heard you went to the art exhibition yesterday. What \_\_\_\_\_ the paintings \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: Very strange! I didn't understand anything!
5. A: What \_\_\_\_\_ next week's reception \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: Very formal. It's definitely going to be an occasion for suits and ties.
6. A: I'm going to visit some friends in Scotland next month. What \_\_\_\_\_ the weather \_\_\_\_\_ then?  
B: I'm not sure. Probably quite cool, especially at night.
7. A: You've got new neighbours, haven't you? What \_\_\_\_\_ they \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: They seem very friendly, but I've only spoken to them once so far.
8. A: What \_\_\_\_\_ the new manager \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: I don't know. I haven't met her yet, but some of my colleagues say she's quite strict.

8

Ask questions using the correct form of "be like". Then complete the answers using the correct form of "be + an adjective" from the box.

|           |           |         |          |
|-----------|-----------|---------|----------|
| crowded   | naughty   | ✓ scary | enormous |
| delicious | difficult | casual  | stylish  |

- A: What was the film like last night?  
 B: It was scary.
- A: What \_\_\_\_\_ next week's exams \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 B: I don't know, but they \_\_\_\_\_ probably \_\_\_\_\_ .
- A: What \_\_\_\_\_ their new house \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 B: It \_\_\_\_\_, with seven bedrooms and two bathrooms.
- A: What \_\_\_\_\_ the shopping-centre \_\_\_\_\_ on Saturdays?  
 B: It \_\_\_\_\_ usually \_\_\_\_\_. Everybody goes then.
- A: What \_\_\_\_\_ the clothes at last week's fashion show \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 B: They \_\_\_\_\_ very \_\_\_\_\_. I wanted to buy everything!
- A: What \_\_\_\_\_ the food \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday evening?  
 B: It \_\_\_\_\_. I ate far too much.
- A: What \_\_\_\_\_ Janet's children \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 B: They \_\_\_\_\_ very \_\_\_\_\_ most of the time, unfortunately.
- A: What \_\_\_\_\_ your party \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow?  
 B: It \_\_\_\_\_ quite \_\_\_\_\_. You don't have to dress up.



Note the differences between these structures.

- **What is Brian like?**  
 ○ This is primarily a question about Brian's character or personality, although it can sometimes refer to his appearance as well. It means, "What kind of person is Brian?"  
 — **What are** your parents **like**, Sally?  
 — Oh, they're very nice people—very understanding.
- **What does Brian look like?**  
 ○ This is a question about Brian's appearance only. It means, "How does Brian appear?"  
 — **What do** your parents **look like**, Sally?  
 — My mother is medium-height and weight, and she's dark with green eyes. My father is quite tall and well-built and he's got fair hair and blue eyes.
- **What does Brian like?**  
 ○ This is a question about Brian's interests and hobbies. It means, "What does Brian enjoy?"
- **What would Brian like?**  
 ○ This is a question about Brian's desires and wants. It means, "What does Brian want?"
- Use **how is/are ...?** when you want to learn about people's health or psychological states.  
 — **How are** your parents, Sally?  
 — Oh, they're very well, thanks.
- You can use both **what ... like?** and **how ...?** when you're asking about places or things.  
 — **What was** the weather **like?**/**How** was the weather?  
 — Oh, it was awful. It rained non-stop throughout our holiday.

9

Complete the following sentences using "What...like?", "What...look like?", "What do/does...like?", or "Would...like?" in the most appropriate tense.

1. *Michael:* So, what \_\_\_\_\_ the weather \_\_\_\_\_ there recently?  
*Ron:* Actually, we've had quite a mild winter here this year.
2. *Zeynep:* How will I recognize Özden when I see her? What \_\_\_\_\_ she \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Gülsün:* Don't worry—you can't miss her! She's quite tall, with bright red hair and green eyes.
3. *Sedef:* So tell me—what \_\_\_\_\_ Mert \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Aslıhan:* Oh, he's a very quiet but thoughtful person, and he absolutely loves animals—especially dogs.
4. *Mr. Menelah:* So, Mr. Saftig—what \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ the most when you were a child?  
*Mr. Saftig:* Strawberry ice cream! Oh, and riding my bicycle quickly down hills.
5. *Dennis:* I've never heard of an opossum. What kind of animal is that? What \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Mr. Wilson:* Well, I suppose that, in some ways, it resembles a large rat in appearance.
6. *Nuran:* \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ anything to eat before we leave?  
*Oya:* No, thanks. I think that I'll just eat something when we arrive.
7. *Firuze:* \_\_\_\_\_ Istanbul at all \_\_\_\_\_ your own hometown?  
*Murat:* Not at all! My hometown only has about 7,000 people, so they're completely different places.
8. *John:* And what about your father? What \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Susan:* Well, his biggest passion was writing—he was always writing stories and poems and things.
9. *Osman:* What \_\_\_\_\_ İbrahim \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Sevgi:* Well, he's quite short—just five feet tall—and he's got no hair and two differently coloured eyes.
10. *Eda:* What \_\_\_\_\_ next weekend's party \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Selin:* I think that it's going to be quite nice. Why don't you come along?
11. *Stephen:* What \_\_\_\_\_ your grandmother \_\_\_\_\_, do you know?  
*Sandra:* Very similar to me and my mother actually—we all have very similar facial features, at least.
12. *Waiter:* And what \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_, ma'am?  
*Ms. O'Connor:* I think that I'll have the roast beef and a nice bottle of red wine.
13. *Carrie:* What \_\_\_\_\_ our hotel \_\_\_\_\_, do you know?  
*Doug:* Well, according to the brochure, it's a big luxurious place by the seaside, with a heated swimming pool, so I think that it'll be quite nice.
14. *Zuhal:* So, what \_\_\_\_\_ this new boyfriend of yours \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Mihraca:* Well, let's see—he spends a lot of time working on cars, and of course he absolutely adores football. Nothing out of the ordinary, really.
15. *Mr. Tricksome:* Hmm, I wonder—what \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. Raadsel \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Mr. Abbott:* I really have no idea, Mr. Tricksome, because I've never seen him.

**10** Ask questions using *what ... like?* , *what ... look like?* and *how ...?* In some of them, two forms are possible. Pay attention to the verb form.

1. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (your mother)  
B: She's feeling much better now, thanks.
2. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (Tim's new girlfriend)  
B: Oh, she's quite pretty, but not very talkative.
3. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (the food in the restaurant)  
B: It was delicious. We all ate far too much.
4. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (the conference)  
B: Very interesting and informative. There were some very famous speakers from other countries.
5. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (your new neighbours)  
B: They seem to be very nice people. I think they may be Indian or Pakistani.
6. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (Mr. Jenkins)  
B: The accountant? He's very serious and never smiles.
7. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (Katrina)  
B: She's very depressed actually. The news has really upset her.
8. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (Tina's husband)  
B: Not very tall and a bit overweight. He's got very little hair—in fact, he's quite bald.
9. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (Lucy)  
B: A bit tired these days, because she's working on a new project.

**11** Find the opposites of the adjectives in the box.

- |                |                 |              |                   |
|----------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------------|
| a) polite      | b) serious      | c) cruel     | d) modest         |
| e) easy-going  | f) generous     | g) nervous   | h) selfish        |
| i) interesting | j) hard-working | k) insincere | l) self-confident |

1. Judy gets angry very quickly. She is very *bad-tempered*, but her sister is very easy-going.
2. Harry is very *funny*. He always makes us laugh, but his wife is really \_\_\_\_\_—she rarely smiles.
3. My sister never helps with the housework. She's so *lazy*, but my brother is very \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The assistant manager is very *rude* to the staff. He always shouts at them. But the manager is very \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Mr Martin is so *mean*! He never wants to spend his money, but his wife is very \_\_\_\_\_. She always tries to give money or other things to charity.
6. I'm a *shy* person—I find it difficult to meet new people. But my sister is very \_\_\_\_\_—she has lots of friends.
7. Jack is really a *boring* person—he always talks about unimportant things. But his sister is very \_\_\_\_\_. It's always a pleasure to listen to her.
8. Jill is really *soft-hearted*—she never hurts other people or living things, but her brother, Jack, likes hurting things—he is so \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Sue is very *honest*. She always says what she thinks openly, but Mary is \_\_\_\_\_. I never believe what she says.
10. Veronica is so *vain*! She always boasts about her appearance and successes, but her sister, Alexia, is very \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Sally always pays attention to other people's needs and feelings. She is so *considerate*, but her brother is very \_\_\_\_\_—he only thinks of himself.
12. Jake is a *calm* person by nature, but Mike is very \_\_\_\_\_. He feels terrible before exams.

**12**

Look at Picture 8 (*Once Upon a Time in Istanbul*) at the end of this book and fill in the blanks by choosing the most appropriate preposition from the box given below.

**Once Upon a Time in Istanbul ...**

|                |                |               |
|----------------|----------------|---------------|
| <i>above</i>   | <i>above</i>   | <i>across</i> |
| <i>along</i>   | <i>along</i>   | <i>below</i>  |
| <i>between</i> | <i>between</i> | <i>by</i>     |
| <i>from</i>    | <i>over</i>    | <i>to</i>     |
| <i>towards</i> | <i>under</i>   | <i>under</i>  |

*Once upon a time, in an alternate universe, the city of Istanbul looked very different. Ahir Zaman, a time-and-space traveller from today's Istanbul, took a trip to this alternate Istanbul and took a picture of it. And now he's back, and he's describing his observations:*

"It was very beautiful when I took the picture. There was a large mosque (1) \_\_\_\_\_ the sea, and lots of lovely old houses (2) \_\_\_\_\_ both sides of the Bosphorus. A beautiful rainbow was stretching (3) \_\_\_\_\_ the Bosphorus, and there was a big clipper ship (4) \_\_\_\_\_ the rainbow. The ship was moving north (5) \_\_\_\_\_ the Bosphorus, so it was (6) \_\_\_\_\_ the Asian and the European shores of the city. There was a rowboat there, too, but it was going (7) \_\_\_\_\_ the Bosphorus, (8) \_\_\_\_\_ Eminönü on the European shore (9) \_\_\_\_\_ Moda on the Asian shore. There was also a hot air balloon floating (10) \_\_\_\_\_ the Bosphorus; I think it was moving south (11) \_\_\_\_\_ the Marmara Sea. While I was watching it, a man jumped from the balloon and opened his parachute! At that moment, I decided to take a picture, and so in my picture, the parachutist is (12) \_\_\_\_\_ the balloon and the water. After I took the picture, I looked at the water and I saw a submarine! It was directly (13) \_\_\_\_\_ the balloon. Its periscope was (14) \_\_\_\_\_ the surface of the water, but the submarine itself was (15) \_\_\_\_\_ the water, so I could only see its outline. Overall, it was a lovely and surprising scene, and I'm very glad that I took a picture of it!"

**DISCUSSION: What do you think?**

1. What do you think Istanbul looked like 100 or 200 years ago? How was it different from today's Istanbul? In your opinion, what was the city like at that time?
2. In your opinion, what will the city of Istanbul—or your own city or town—look like in 100 or 200 years' time? How will it be different from today? What will it be like at that time?

# UNIT 12

## Comparative and Superlative forms of Adjectives and Adverbs

1. Use **-er ... than** for short adjectives and **more ... than** for longer ones when comparing two things.

She is **taller than** me.  
I find basketball **more interesting than** football.

Use **-est** for short adjectives and **the most** for longer ones when comparing three or more things.

Sue is **the tallest** in the family.  
I find basketball **the most interesting** of all the sports.

**Irregular forms:** *good — better — best*      *bad — worse — worst*      *far — farther — farthest*  
*further — furthest*

You can also compare quantities.

**With countable nouns:**  
*many — more — most*  
*few — fewer — fewest*

**With uncountable nouns:**  
*much — more — most*  
*little — less — least*

A bicycle has **two** wheels, a car has **four**, and a lorry has **six**.  
A car has **more wheels** than a bicycle, but it has **fewer wheels** than a lorry.  
A lorry has **the most** wheels of the three.  
A bicycle has **the fewest** wheels of the three.

Sue has got £10, Mary has got £15, and Jane has got £20.  
Mary has got **more money** than Sue, but she has got **less money** than Jane.  
Jane has got **the most money** of the three.  
Sue has got **the least money** of the three.

2. Use **as + adjective + as** or **the same + noun + as** when the quality or quantity you compare is equal.

Joe is 16, and Tom is 16, too.  
Joe is **as old as** Tom.  
Joe is **the same age as** Tom.

Joe has got ten CDs, and Tom has got ten CDs, too.  
Joe has got **as many** CDs **as** Tom.  
Joe has **the same number** of CDs **as** Tom.

Use **not as ... as** or **not so ... as** if the quality or quantity you compare is not equal.

Sue is 16 years old, but Mary is 14.      You have £20, but I have £10.  
Mary **isn't as/so old as** Sue.      I don't have **as/so much money as** you do.

3. Use **"different from"** to express differences; **"similar to"** to express similarities.

Your bag is black, mine is brown.  
Your bag is a **different** colour **from** mine.  
Your bag **isn't the same** colour **as** mine.

Your blouse is **similar to** mine. They are both purple- and white-striped, but mine has got pockets. Yours hasn't.

**1** Form two sentences using the structures *as + adjective + as* and *the same + noun + as*.

e.g. Jane is twelve. Mary is twelve, too. (*old/age*)  
Jane is as old as Mary./Jane is the same age as Mary.

1. Peter weighs 57 kilos, and Tony weighs 57 kilos, too. (*heavy/weight*)  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. My house is 10 km away from the city centre, and yours is 10 km away, too. (*far/distance*)  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Mike's flat is 80 square metres. Sarah's flat is 80 square metres, too. (*big/size*)  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Your house has five bedrooms, and ours has five, too. (*many/number*)  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. The city is 5°C at the moment. The mountains are also 5°C at the moment. (*cold/temperature*)  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. His car can go at 190 kilometres per hour, and mine can go at 190 kilometres per hour, too.  
(*fast/speed*)  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Jackie's hair is jet black. Sue's hair is jet black, too. (*dark/colour*)  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. The swimming pool at the hotel is 10 metres across, and the one at the sports centre is 10 metres  
across, too. (*wide/width*)  
\_\_\_\_\_

**2** Form two sentences using the comparative structures as in the example.

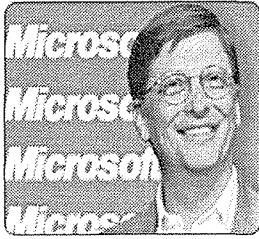
e.g. Sally is ten. Jane is twelve. (*old*)  
Sally isn't as old as Jane. / Jane is older than Sally.

1. Mr. Hopkins is thirty-two. Mrs. Hopkins is thirty-five. (*young*)  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. The Eiffel Tower is 300 metres high, and the Leaning Tower of Pisa is 54.5 metres high. (*tall*)  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. The first question took five minutes to answer. The second question took two minutes. (*difficult*)  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. I paid £20 for the red jumper and £12 for the green one. (*expensive*)  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Sue has got £50, but I have only got £10. (*much money*)  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Our maths teacher has given us two exams so far, but our English teacher has given four. (*many*)  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_



3

Study the information about the three people. Then write sentences using the given words. Use *so/as...as*, *the same...as*, *more/-er than*, *the most/-est*.



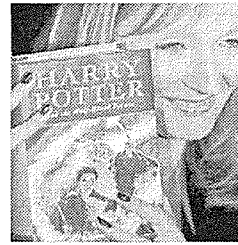
**Bill Gates**

Age: 51  
 Height: 179cm  
 Wealth: ~\$50 billion  
 # of Children: 3  
 # of Siblings: 2



**Mick Jagger**

Age: 63  
 Height: 178cm  
 Wealth: ~\$500 million  
 # of Children: 7  
 # of Siblings: 1



**J.K. Rowling**

Age: 41  
 Height: 163cm  
 Wealth: ~\$1 billion  
 # of Children: 3  
 # of Siblings: 1

1. Bill Gates / old / J.K. Rowling  
 Bill Gates is \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Mick Jagger / old / of the three  
 Mick Jagger is \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Mick Jagger / not tall / Bill Gates  
 Mick Jagger is \_\_\_\_\_.
4. J.K. Rowling / short / of the three  
 J.K. Rowling is \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Bill Gates / wealthy / of the three  
 Bill Gates is \_\_\_\_\_.
6. J.K. Rowling / money / Mick Jagger  
 J.K. Rowling has got \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Bill Gates / number of children / J.K. Rowling  
 Bill Gates has got \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Mick Jagger / children / of the three  
 Mick Jagger has got \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Bill Gates / siblings / Mick Jagger and J.K. Rowling  
 Bill Gates has got \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Mick Jagger / number of siblings / J.K. Rowling  
 Mick Jagger has got \_\_\_\_\_.

4

Using the words in parentheses, choose the correct comparative patterns (-er than / (not) as ... as / the same ... as / different ... from / less ..... than) to complete the dialogue.

Mr. and Mrs. Chivers want to buy a new house. At the moment, they are with their estate agent and he is comparing two possible houses.

Agent: I'd like to take you to see two houses tomorrow, so do you have any questions for me?

Mr. C: Yes. What are they like and where are they?

Agent: Well, one is a cottage and the other is a normal house, and they're both in the suburbs.

Mr. C: Which one is (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (near) to the centre?

Agent: They're almost (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (distance) \_\_\_\_\_ each other actually, but the house is (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (close) to the station.

Mr. C: Right. Please tell us more about them.

Agent: Well, the cottage is over one hundred years old, so it's much (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (old) \_\_\_\_\_ the house. The house is really quite modern.

Mrs. C: Oh, I love old houses. Is it pretty?

Agent: Yes, I suppose the cottage is (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (pretty) \_\_\_\_\_ the house, but the house is very elegant.

Mr. C: How many rooms do they each have?

Agent: The cottage has (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (number of rooms) \_\_\_\_\_ the house—seven, but two of the three bedrooms in the cottage are much (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (small) \_\_\_\_\_ the ones in the house.

Mrs. C: And what about the kitchens?

Agent: They are exactly (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (size) \_\_\_\_\_ each other, but the kitchen in the cottage is a (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (shape) \_\_\_\_\_ the one in the house. It's square, and the other is oblong. Also the kitchen in the house is (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (not, well-equipped) \_\_\_\_\_ the one in the cottage. It only has two cupboards—the cottage kitchen has five.

Mr. C: And the bathrooms?

Agent: Well, the bathroom in the cottage is much (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (modern) \_\_\_\_\_ the one in the house. In fact, it's very old-fashioned. And the walls are a (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (colour) \_\_\_\_\_ those in the house. In the cottage, they're green, but in the house, they're blue.

Mr. C: How big are the living rooms?

Agent: Oh, the living room in the house is two metres (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (long) \_\_\_\_\_ the one in the cottage, but it faces north, so it gets (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (light) \_\_\_\_\_ the cottage living room. When there's no sun, it can be quite dark.

Mrs. C: So, I suppose the living room in the house is (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (cold).

Agent: A little bit in summer. But the house has a (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (good) heating system \_\_\_\_\_ the cottage, so it's not a problem in winter. The cottage only has a fire place in the living room, but it seems to heat the room quite well.

Mr. C: Do they both have gardens?

Agent: Yes, they do. I think the two gardens are (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (lovely) \_\_\_\_\_ each other. There's no difference at all.

Mr. C: So, which one is (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (expensive)?

Agent: Well, let's discuss that tomorrow!

**Study the box.**



**too**

**enough**

**too + adjective + to do**

**adjective + enough + to do**

I'm **too tired**. I **can't go** to the party.  
I'm **too tired to go** to the party.

It's **warm enough**. We **can go** on a picnic.  
It's **warm enough (for us) to go** on a picnic.

This soup is **too cold**. I **can't eat** it.  
This soup is **too cold (for me) to eat**.

The chair is **safe enough**. You **can stand** on it.  
The chair is **safe enough (for you) to stand on**.

**5** Combine the two sentences into one statement using "too" or "enough", without changing the meaning. Add *for + pronoun/noun* where necessary.

*e.g.* She is young. She can't go out alone.

She is too young to go out alone.

This coffee is still hot. I can drink it.

This coffee is still hot enough for me to drink.

1. This dress is expensive. I can't afford it.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Our living room is small. We can't have a party in it.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. He got up late. He couldn't catch the bus.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. I'm not tall. I can't get that book from the top shelf.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. These kiwis are ripe. We can eat them.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. He's ill. He can't go to the concert tonight.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. The weather is warm. We can go swimming.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Her English is good. She can get a job as a translator.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. The shelf is high. I can't reach it.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. The garden is big. The children can play in it.  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. Our players are not enthusiastic. We can't win tomorrow's match.  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. Your kitchen is small. You can't put four chairs and a table in it.  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. After a few days of rest in bed, she was feeling well. She met her friends.  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. Veronica is very selfish. She doesn't care about other people's feelings.  
\_\_\_\_\_

6

a) Rewrite the sentences with “too” using the opposite of the adjective.

e.g. She isn't old enough to go out alone.  
*She is too young to go out alone.*

1. The film isn't on early enough for the children to watch.

2. This book isn't easy enough for him to understand.

3. It isn't dry enough to go out for a walk.

4. It isn't light enough to take a photo.

b) Rewrite the sentences with “enough” using the opposite of the adjective.

e.g. The river is too wide to swim across.  
*The river isn't narrow enough to swim across.*

1. She's too short to get a job as a model.

2. These jeans are too dirty to wear to a party.

3. The report was too boring for him to read properly.

4. We got to the sales too late to get any bargains.

**Study the box.**

**Adjective or Adverb**

Remember that **adjectives** are used to describe *nouns*; **adverbs** are used to describe *verbs*.

He is a **careless driver**. He **drives carelessly**.

You can use the comparative and superlative forms with both adjectives and adverbs.

He is a **more careless** driver **than** me.

He drives **more carelessly than** me.

He doesn't drive **as carefully as** me.

You are driving **too slowly** to get to the meeting on time.

**Irregular forms:**

| Adjective   | Adverb       | Comparative   | Superlative    |
|-------------|--------------|---------------|----------------|
| <i>good</i> | <i>well</i>  | <i>better</i> | <i>best</i>    |
| <i>bad</i>  | <i>badly</i> | <i>worse</i>  | <i>worst</i>   |
| <i>hard</i> | <i>hard</i>  | <i>harder</i> | <i>hardest</i> |
| <i>fast</i> | <i>fast</i>  | <i>faster</i> | <i>fastest</i> |

His English is **better than** mine. (*comparative adjective*)

He speaks English **better than** me. (*comparative adverb*)

**7**

Complete the sentences with the correct adjective or adverb form of the given word.

- e.g. *quick* I didn't run quickly enough to catch my train.
1. *careful* My brother doesn't drive as \_\_\_\_\_ as me.
  2. *careful* I'm a more \_\_\_\_\_ driver than my brother.
  3. *good* My sister draws pictures \_\_\_\_\_ than me, but she can't sing as \_\_\_\_\_ as me.
  4. *bad* He's \_\_\_\_\_ at football than me, but he doesn't play tennis as \_\_\_\_\_ as me.
  5. *clever* She wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ enough to get a place at university.
  6. *efficient* The staff in the sales department don't work as \_\_\_\_\_ as the workers in the factory.
  7. *hard* She finds the course much \_\_\_\_\_ than I do, so she works much \_\_\_\_\_.
  8. *cheap* You can buy clothes more \_\_\_\_\_ in the market than in the shops, but other items are actually not as \_\_\_\_\_ as you think.
  9. *patient* Our maths teacher isn't as \_\_\_\_\_ as our geography teacher. In fact, our geography teacher is more \_\_\_\_\_ than anyone in school.
  10. *calm* He's usually too \_\_\_\_\_ to get upset about things, but yesterday he didn't act as \_\_\_\_\_ as he normally does.

**8**

Choose the correct one in parentheses.

1. She didn't study (*hard/harder*) (*than/enough*) to pass the exam.
2. Your house is (*so/as*) (*close/closely*) to the office (*than/as*) mine.
3. It was snowing (*heavier/heavily*) yesterday, so I didn't go shopping.
4. Your pronunciation is sometimes not as (*good/well*) as your sister's, but generally you speak (*so/more*) (*fluently/fluently*) (*as/than*) her.
5. Trains are much (*fast/faster*) than cars, and I think they are (*safely/safer*), too.
6. Our English teacher speaks (*as/too*) (*quickly/quick*) for us to understand.
7. The red sweater is almost (*the same/as*) price (*than/as*) the blue one, but it is (*well/better*) quality.
8. Alice isn't (*the same/as*) tall as Janice. She is (*short/shorter*) than her.
9. Because he gave me (*clear/clearly*) directions, I found his house quite (*easy/easily*).
10. I don't think I draw (*too/as*) (*worse/badly*) (*as/than*) you. Look! The picture you drew doesn't look like anything at all.
11. At the end-of-term concert, Jerry performed (*more/the most*) (*successful/successfully*) of all the students.
12. She is (*too/so*) (*lazily/lazy*) to get up early and get to school on time.

**Study the box.**

**Pronouns after *than*, *as* and *from***

Use object pronouns (*me, him, us, etc.*) after **than**, **as** and **from** if there is no verb, and use subject pronouns (*I, he, we, etc.*) if there is a verb.

I'm taller than **him**.

I'm taller than **he is**.

She can't run as fast as **me**.

She can't run as fast as **I can**.

You can use *mine, yours, hers, etc.* instead of *my hair, your bag, etc.*

Her hair is longer than **my hair**.

Her hair is longer than **mine**.

Your watch isn't the same make as **his watch**.

Your watch isn't the same make as **his**.

**9**

**Choose the correct one in parentheses.**

e.g. Sally's hair isn't as long as (*you/your/yours*).

1. He lives much closer to the office than (*I/me/mine*).
2. She doesn't earn the same salary as (*we/us/ours*) do.
3. His new house is quite different from (*he/his/him*) old one.
4. I don't buy as many new clothes as (*she/her/hers*) does.
5. Your bicycle isn't different from (*I/my/mine*) at all.
6. I didn't think that film was as funny as (*you/your/yours*) said it was.
7. Our car was much cheaper than (*they/them/theirs*), but it seems just as good.
8. Their kitchen is enormous. In fact, it's about the same size as (*us/our/ours*) living room!
9. We come from the same part of the country, but my accent is different from (*she/her/hers*).
10. He works much faster than (*I/me/mine*), but he never gets as many questions right as (*I/me/mine*) do.
11. Your house is almost the same distance from the station as (*me/mine*).
12. Barbara's brother was also a good musician, but he never became as famous as (*her/she*).
13. Susan plays the piano much better than (*your/you*) because she practises more than (*you/your*) do.
14. I'm sure you can write your research paper better than (*me/I*) can.
15. My brother is not very happy with his car, so I've decided to buy a model different from (*him/his*).

10

**A Tall Tale and a Taller Tale**

Complete the dialogue by changing the adjective in parentheses into the most appropriate form: comparative, superlative, or "as...as". If there is no adjective in parentheses, use "more", "the most", or "fewer".

Will: Did you go fishing yesterday?

Bill: I did.

Will: Did you catch anything?

Bill: I did. I caught a fish about 50 centimetres long.

Will: That's nothing—yesterday, I caught a/an (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (long) fish: it was about 75 centimetres.

Bill: Well, my 50-centimetre fish isn't (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (long) one ever for me. I caught a 1-metre fish a couple of years ago.

Will: That's impressive. But I also caught 45 fish yesterday, all 25 centimetres long.

Bill: Oh, I caught (3) \_\_\_\_\_ fish than that yesterday. I caught 75 25-centimetre fish and 150 15-centimetre fish.

Will: That's not bad. (4) \_\_\_\_\_ fish that I've ever caught in one day is 2,012.

Bill: That's impressive. But my dad has caught (5) \_\_\_\_\_ fish than that.

Will: Oh, really? Does your dad fish?

Bill: He does. And two or three days ago, he caught 6,000 fish in half an hour.

Will: My dad fishes, too. Actually, he's probably (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (good) fisherman in the world.

Bill: He can't be, because my dad's (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (good) than him.

Will: Who told you that?

Bill: My mum.

Will: Don't believe her. My dad sometimes catches 1,000 fish per minute. I don't think your father has ever caught (8) \_\_\_\_\_ many fish \_\_\_\_\_ that in just one minute. Once, he even caught an 8-metre fish. Has your dad ever caught anything (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (big) that?

Bill: Of course. My dad can catch 8-metre fish, no problem. About 5 years ago, he caught a blue whale. That was (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (big) dinner of our lives.

Will: That sounds good, but I've had a (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (big) dinner than that, you know.

Bill: No, you haven't. You're (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (bad) liar that I've ever seen.

Will: I'm not. My dad once wrestled a dinosaur, killed it, and we had it for dinner.

Bill: There are two problems with your story.

Will: Oh, really? What are they?

Bill: First, a dinosaur isn't (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (big) a blue whale. The blue whale is (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (big) animal ever. But there's a (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (big) problem with your story than that.

Will: And what's that, then?

Bill: Dinosaurs have been extinct for 65 million years.

Will: Um ... well ... perhaps I made a mistake.

Bill: You certainly did. In fact, this is probably (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (bad) argument of your life.

Will: Oh, it's not. I've had (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (bad) arguments than this one, believe me.

Bill: I'm sure that that's possible.

Will: It is, but I've never told (18) \_\_\_\_\_ lies than I have today.

Bill: But you've only told 8 lies today. Is that really (19) \_\_\_\_\_ lies that you've ever told?

Will: It is and it isn't.

Bill: What does that mean? Will, you're certainly (20) \_\_\_\_\_ confusing person I've ever met. Explain yourself!

Will: You see, I said "It is and it isn't" because I did not tell 8 lies today. I told (21) \_\_\_\_\_ than that: I told only 7 lies.

Bill: Now you're lying again! I counted them! There were 7! What was the true one, then?

Will: Well, I really did catch a 75-centimetre fish yesterday.

Bill: What?!?

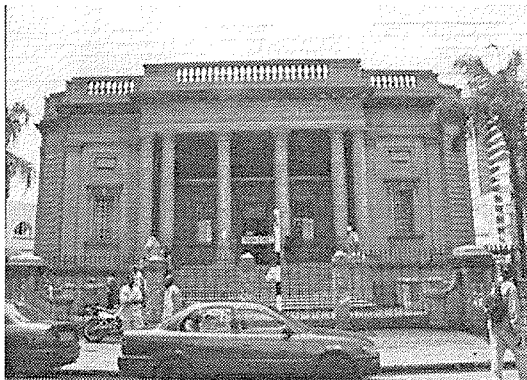
Will: Yes, it's true. Look at this photograph. Photographs never lie ...

11

a) Read the passages below and then answer the questions about each passage.

*Ken is going on a one-month trip to four distant places around the world, and sends postcards to his flatmate in Sheffield, Britain.*

### Nairobi, Kenya



MAY 6—So, here I am in Nairobi, Kenya, and it's quite wet because it's the rainy season here. The city is on the equator, so there is really only a rainy season and a dry season. But the rainfall here is not very extreme, and the temperature never falls really low—in fact, Nairobi's informal nickname is "The City in the Sun". It's a very exciting cosmopolitan city, and there are many immigrants here from other former British colonies, and lots of mosques, churches, Hindu temples, and Sikh gurdwaras. Also, on one edge of the city, there's the fantastic Nairobi National Park—the only national park in the world inside the boundaries of a city. But Nairobi's not perfect, of course: the level of poverty is very

high. There is a district called Kibera here. With around 1 million people, it is the largest slum in Africa, and it has no sewage system or roads or running water. Nairobi is also rather dangerous: there are a lot of violent armed robberies, and there is even a nickname for the crime here: "nairobbery". Still, I like staying in Nairobi: it's a fascinating city. Unfortunately, I'm leaving next week for Shenyang, China—a whole new adventure!

1. Where is Nairobi?
2. What is "The City in the Sun"?
3. How many seasons are there in Nairobi?
4. Where are many of Nairobi's immigrants from?
5. How many people live in Kibera?
6. What is Kibera like?
7. What is Nairobi like?

### Shenyang, China



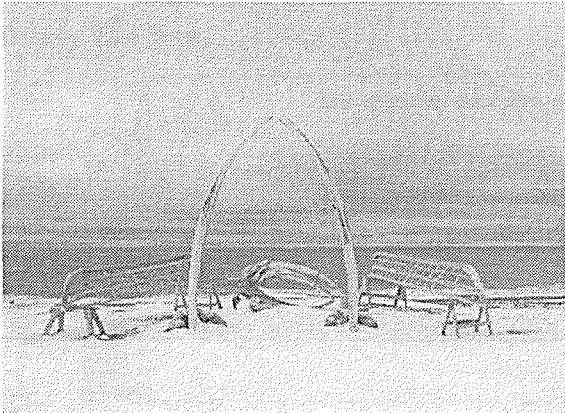
MAY 17—Here I am in Shenyang! It's quite different from Nairobi, but also, in some ways, very similar. The temperature is only a little lower than in Nairobi—it's about 23 degrees here today. It's a little bit larger than Nairobi, too, with about 4 or 5 million people. But Shenyang is a much more industrial city. And because of that, the air quality is terrible! Some people even wear surgical masks outside in order to protect themselves! So anyway, it's really a very modern city. For example, in the Heping business district, there are bright neon lights everywhere at night. There's also a huge, famous fiberglass statue—one of China's

largest ones—of Mao Zedong in Zhongshan Square in the Heping district. The city's also got a large old football stadium; Shenyang Ginde, a team in the Chinese Super League, plays there. But the city is very historical as well—for example, the Mukden Palace, home of the emperor of China between 1625 and 1644, is here. Well, I'm travelling on to Barrow, Alaska—in the United States—in a few days, so I think I'll go and do some more exploring of Shenyang. I'll write to you from Barrow.

8. Is Shenyang bigger or smaller than Nairobi?
9. What is the air in Shenyang like?
10. What is the Heping district like at night?
11. Where is the famous statue of Mao Zedong?
12. What is the statue of Mao Zedong in Zhongshan Square like?
13. Who plays in Shenyang's old football stadium?
14. What was the Mukden Palace?



## Barrow, United States

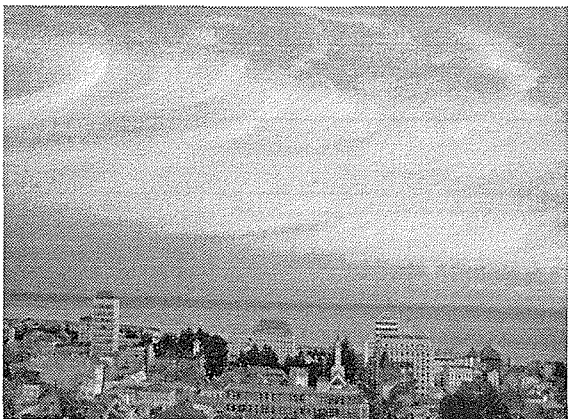


MAY 29—Here I am in Barrow! And it's cold, cold, cold! But it's strange, too: the sun never sets here now! And it won't set until August 2nd! So I'm writing this postcard outside, at 2:00 in the morning, by sunlight! The sky is wonderfully open and clear here all the time. Also, right now it's spring whaling season! There's still ice on the water—the water's only ice-free for 2 or 3 months a year—but people are out on the sea hunting whales! When they get back, the successful hunters will have a celebration called Nalukataq. But it's also quite lonely

here: there's only about 5,000 people, and there are no roads from here to other towns—I had to come here by plane. For that reason, its nickname is "The End of the World". Still, it's not actually poor, because there is oil in the region. Most of the people here are Native Alaskans of the Inupiat culture, and you can hear the Inupiaq language almost as often as you hear English. Anyhow, I'm starting to get a bit tired now. I'll write again when I get to Punta Arenas (in Chile!) sometime next week.

15. When will the sun set again in Barrow?
16. What is the sky in Barrow like?
17. How long is the sea in Barrow free of ice?
18. What is Nalukataq?
19. Is Barrow as large as Nairobi or Shenyang?
20. How did Ken get to Barrow?
21. What languages do people in Barrow speak?

## Punta Arenas, Chile



JUNE 3—And finally here I am in Punta Arenas, in southern Chile. It's June 3rd, but it's winter here because this is the southern hemisphere. And it's cold! Not as cold as Barrow, of course, but it's only about 2 degrees right now. The city is very windy, too: sometimes there can be gusts of wind of about 100 kilometres an hour. But Punta Arenas doesn't get a lot of snow, so that's good. It's quite a modern city—there are lots of glass and concrete office buildings downtown. The city's main square is a very

interesting place, too: for example, yesterday I saw a group of street musicians there. They were playing a mix of Spanish and Native American music, and at the same time, in a heated tent on the other side of the square, there was a state dance troupe performing a highly modern ballet show! The city's not especially cosmopolitan, but—I find this very interesting—the main cemetery is actually very cosmopolitan, with lots of German, Croatian, and Russian graves. Anyway, I need to go now and start packing: I'm catching the plane back home tomorrow morning. See you soon!

22. What season is it in June in Punta Arenas?
23. Is Punta Arenas colder than Barrow?
24. What is the weather like in Punta Arenas in June?
25. What is Punta Arenas's downtown like?
26. What is Punta Arenas's main square like?
27. What was the ballet show in the main square like?
28. Is Punta Arenas as cosmopolitan as its cemetery?

b) When he arrives back home in Sheffield, Ken checks some information in an encyclopedia on the four cities' climates. Use the encyclopedia's tables to compare the cities, using comparatives, superlatives, "(not) so/as...as", and "the same...as".

**Temperature (°C.)**

|                     | Jan   | Feb   | Mar   | Apr   | May  | Jun  | Jul  | Aug  | Sept | Oct  | Nov   | Dec   |
|---------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|------|------|------|------|------|-------|-------|
| <b>Nairobi</b>      | 18.5  | 19.5  | 19.5  | 19.0  | 17.5 | 16.5 | 16.0 | 16.0 | 17.5 | 18.5 | 18.0  | 18.0  |
| <b>Shenyang</b>     | -12.0 | -8.0  | 0     | 9.5   | 16.5 | 22.5 | 26.0 | 24.0 | 17.5 | 9.5  | -0.5  | -9.5  |
| <b>Barrow</b>       | -26.5 | -28.0 | -26.0 | -18.0 | -7.5 | 1.0  | 4.5  | 4.0  | -1.0 | -8.5 | -17.5 | -23.5 |
| <b>Punta Arenas</b> | 10.5  | 10.5  | 8.5   | 7.0   | 4.5  | 3.0  | 1.5  | 3.5  | 5.0  | 7.0  | 8.0   | 10.0  |

**Number of Wet Days\***

|                     | Jan | Feb | Mar | Apr | May | Jun | Jul | Aug | Sept | Oct | Nov | Dec |
|---------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|-----|-----|-----|
| <b>Nairobi</b>      | 5   | 6   | 11  | 16  | 17  | 9   | 6   | 7   | 6    | 8   | 15  | 11  |
| <b>Shenyang</b>     | 2   | 2   | 3   | 5   | 7   | 8   | 11  | 8   | 7    | 5   | 4   | 3   |
| <b>Barrow</b>       | 3   | 3   | 3   | 3   | 3   | 4   | 8   | 10  | 8    | 9   | 5   | 4   |
| <b>Punta Arenas</b> | 6   | 5   | 7   | 9   | 6   | 8   | 6   | 5   | 5    | 5   | 5   | 8   |

\*A "wet day" is a day with more than 0.25mm of precipitation (rain or snow).

e.g. In January, it is very cold in Shenyang and Barrow, but it's colder in Barrow.  
 Nairobi is never as cold as the other three cities.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. \_\_\_\_\_
12. \_\_\_\_\_

# UNIT 13

## The Passive

Study the box.

**be made of / be made from**

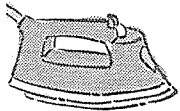
Both *be made of* and *be made from* are used to say the raw material of an object. Use *be made of* if the raw material is still recognizable, and *be made from* if it is not.

This table *is made of* wood. (*the wood can still be recognized.*)  
Paper *is made from* wood. (*the wood cannot be recognized.*)

**1** Make sentences with *be made of* using the words in the lists. You can use the words in List b more than once.

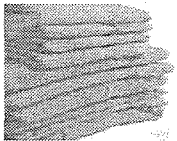
a) products: towels, irons, axes, hoses, wallets, bicycles, boots, igloos, jars

b) raw materials: glass, metal, plastic, leather, snow, cotton, wood, rubber



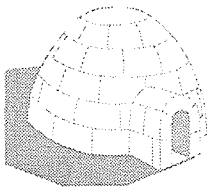
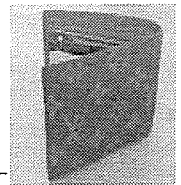
1. Irons are made of metal and plastic.

2. \_\_\_\_\_



3. \_\_\_\_\_

4. \_\_\_\_\_



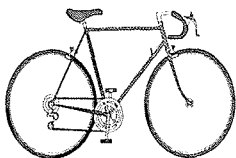
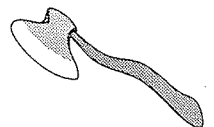
5. \_\_\_\_\_

6. \_\_\_\_\_



7. \_\_\_\_\_

8. \_\_\_\_\_



9. \_\_\_\_\_

2

Match the things in Column A with the material they are made from in Column B. Then make sentences as in the example.

| Column A | Column B  |
|----------|-----------|
| ✓ glass  | grapes    |
| bread    | petroleum |
| butter   | flour     |
| plastic  | milk      |
| wine     | clay      |
| china    | barley    |
| whisky   | ✓ sand    |

1. Glass \_\_\_\_\_ *is made from sand.*
2. Bread \_\_\_\_\_
3. Butter \_\_\_\_\_
4. Plastic \_\_\_\_\_
5. Wine \_\_\_\_\_
6. China \_\_\_\_\_
7. Whisky \_\_\_\_\_

3

Make sentences as in the example using the words in the boxes.

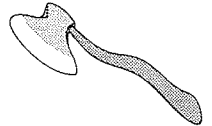
What are these objects used for?

|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| a camera      | ✓ a compass       |
| a pencil      | a hose            |
| a wheelbarrow | an electric drill |
| an axe        | a spade           |

|        |       |
|--------|-------|
| write  | chop  |
| ✓ find | water |
| make   | dig   |
| carry  | take  |



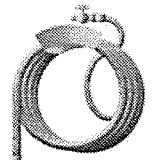
1. A compass is used for finding directions.



2. \_\_\_\_\_ wood.



3. \_\_\_\_\_ photographs.



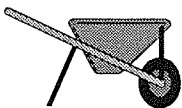
4. \_\_\_\_\_ plants.



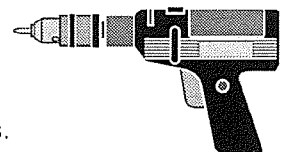
5. \_\_\_\_\_



6. \_\_\_\_\_ in the ground.



7. \_\_\_\_\_ things.



8. \_\_\_\_\_ holes in hard surfaces.

**Study the box.**

**Passive with Simple Present and Simple Past**

Use **am/is/are + past participle** for a verb in simple present, and **was/were + past participle** for a verb in simple past.

People **make** paper from wood.  
Paper **is made** from wood.

In the past, people **used** parchment instead of paper.  
In the past, parchment **was used** instead of paper.

In a passive sentence, the object of the active sentence becomes the subject. In some sentences, you need to use **by + noun/pronoun** to show the original subject.

**The Chinese** invented **paper**.  
**Paper** was invented **by the Chinese**.

**Galileo** invented **the first astronomical telescope**.  
**The first astronomical telescope** was invented **by Galileo**.

**4** Look at the table and make true sentences.

|  |                            |   |  |
|--|----------------------------|---|--|
| ✓ Pupils<br>English<br>Television<br>Two atom bombs<br>Planes<br><i>Great Expectations</i><br>Cars<br>Turkish women<br>Cheap cars<br>The disease malaria | is<br>✓ are<br>was<br>were | invented<br>written<br>repaired<br>flown<br>spoken<br>✓ educated<br>transmitted<br>given<br>dropped<br>produced | by John Logie Baird.<br>by mechanics.<br>all over the world.<br>by pilots.<br>by Charles Dickens.<br>by mosquitoes.<br>✓ by teachers.<br>the right to vote in 1934.<br>in Taiwan.<br>on Japan by the Americans at the end of World War II. |
|--|----------------------------|---|--|

e.g. Pupils are educated by teachers.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_

**5**

Yesterday Maggie had a job interview with the manager of the Star Hotel. Here's their conversation.

*Manager:* There are five other women here. They begin work at 7 o'clock. First, (1) they lay the tables for breakfast. Then (2) the waitresses serve breakfast from 7.30 to 10.00.

*Maggie:* When do the women have breakfast?

*Manager:* Before they start work. When the guests are up, (3) the women make the beds and (4) clean the rooms and the bathrooms. (5) They empty the waste-paper baskets. (6) change the used towels for clean ones and (7) put new soap on the washbasins. Then, (8) they clean the carpets in the hall with the vacuum cleaner, (9) wash the glass doors, and (10) wipe the floors. Then, at about 11.30, (11) they lay the tables for lunch in the dining room.

*Maggie:* Do they prepare the food?

*Manager:* No, (12) Mr. Hook, the chef, and his three assistants prepare and cook the food.

*Maggie:* Do the women do the washing-up?

*Manager:* Yes, (13) they do some of it, but (14) they put most of it in the dishwasher. After that, at about 3 o'clock, they are free. Now, would you like to come and meet the other women?

**a) Rewrite the underlined sentences above in the passive form.**

After Maggie has started work at the hotel, her flatmate, Sally, is asking her about it.

*Sally:* What's the work like, Maggie? Is there a lot to do?

*Maggie:* There certainly is. First of all, (1) the tables are laid for breakfast. Then (2) \_\_\_\_\_ by the waitresses from 7.30 to 10.00. When the guests are up, (3) \_\_\_\_\_ and (4) \_\_\_\_\_ by the women. (5) \_\_\_\_\_, (6) \_\_\_\_\_ for clean ones, and (7) \_\_\_\_\_ on the washbasins. Then, (8) \_\_\_\_\_ with the vacuum cleaner, (9) \_\_\_\_\_, and (10) \_\_\_\_\_.

*Sally:* Good Heavens! What a morning.

*Maggie:* That's not all. At about 11.30, (11) \_\_\_\_\_ for lunch in the dining room.

*Sally:* And what about the food? Do you have to do that, too?

*Maggie:* Fortunately not! (12) \_\_\_\_\_ by \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

*Sally:* And the washing-up?

*Maggie:* Well, (13) \_\_\_\_\_ by the women, but luckily, (14) \_\_\_\_\_ in the dishwasher.

*Sally:* Well, you must be tired—too tired probably—to go to Tom's party tonight.

*Maggie:* Tom's having a party tonight? Then what are we sitting here for?

**b) Ask questions in the passive for the given answers.**

e.g. the tables/lay

A: Who are the tables laid by?

B: The women.

1. breakfast/serve

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: From 7.30 to 10.00.

2. breakfast/serve

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: The waitresses.

3. the food/prepare and cook

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: The chef and his three assistants.

4. the tables/lay for lunch

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: At 11.30.

5. the carpets in the hall/clean

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: With the vacuum cleaner.

6. most of the washing-up/do

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: It's put in the dishwasher.

7. the towels/change

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: The women.

8. the glass doors/clean

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: They are washed.

9. the floors/clean

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: They are wiped.

10. the waste-paper baskets/empty

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: In the morning.

**6**

**Change the following sentences into the passive. Add "by phrase" where necessary.**

e.g. Someone made this pullover in England.

This pullover was made in England.

Mr. Smith locks the doors after school.

The doors are locked by Mr Smith after school.

1. They produce a lot of electrical goods in Japan. \_\_\_\_\_

2. Shakespeare wrote *Romeo and Juliet*. \_\_\_\_\_

3. Industrial pollution causes acid rain. \_\_\_\_\_

4. George Clooney played the hero in *Batman & Robin*. \_\_\_\_\_

5. The storm destroyed many houses last night. \_\_\_\_\_

6. The French government gave the Statue of Liberty to the United States in 1886.  
\_\_\_\_\_

7. People eat a lot of rice in China. \_\_\_\_\_

8. They hold the American presidential elections every four years.  
\_\_\_\_\_

9. Atatürk declared the Turkish republic on 29 October 1923.  
\_\_\_\_\_

10. The Chinese invented gunpowder. \_\_\_\_\_

11. People play football in almost every country in the world.  
\_\_\_\_\_

12. They use twenty-three official languages in India. \_\_\_\_\_

**Study the box.**



If there is an adverb of manner, such as *clearly*, *carefully*, *beautifully*, or a mid-position adverb, such as *first*, *always*, *probably*, etc, in the passive sentence, the adverb is usually used between **be** and **past participle**.

The orchestra played Beethoven's *Seventh Symphony* **beautifully**.  
 Beethoven's *Seventh Symphony* **was beautifully played** by the orchestra.

Mr. Smith **always** locks the doors after school.  
 The doors **are always locked** by Mr. Smith after school.

End-position adverbials, such as *every day*, *yesterday*, *two years ago*, etc, come after the "by" phrase, if there is one.

Istanbul was conquered **by Sultan Mehmed II in 1453**.  
 The machines in our office are regularly dusted **by the cleaners every day**.

**7** Change the following sentences into the passive. Use "by phrase" only where it is necessary, and pay attention to the place of the adverb.

1. People first domesticated goats in the Middle East.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
2. They check the goods carefully before they load them onto the lorry. (*two passives*)  
 \_\_\_\_\_
3. The mayor opened the new shopping centre last week.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
4. People rarely use the tennis courts during the winter months.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
5. Someone mows the grass once a week in summer.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
6. They probably produced this butter in New Zealand.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
7. Millions of people across the country regularly watch this programme.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
8. The British monarch only wears the Crown Jewels on certain state occasions.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
9. The judges explained the rules clearly before the start of the contest.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
10. They last saw the boat near the Spanish coast four days ago.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
11. They escorted the demonstrators quickly out of the building.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
12. People normally keep these birds as household pets.  
 \_\_\_\_\_



**8** *Yesterday, 1 April, was a very eventful day in the Republic of Semantica, and Mr. Gregor Sift is making a list of all the newsworthy events. Unfortunately, he often confuses active and passive voice.*

**Correct the following sentences for him, but be careful: three of the sentences are already correct. Can you find them?**

1. A potential cure for cancer discovered scientists at the University of Syntaxus.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Aging movie star Phonemia Thropp beat up her husband Moe Morph, the ex-boxer.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. The death penalty finally lifted the Parliament.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Cigarettes were caused by the death of over 250 people.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. *Symphony #11 in C-sharp minor* completed the great composer Ignatius Intonata.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. A bus driver was crashed by her bus and two people killed.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. An airplane hijacked a group of Agglutinense freedom fighters.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. President Passive and Prime Minister Active were signed by the nuclear power agreement.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Famous couple Split Jonson and Miranda Infinitive were divorced by their child Adverb.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. An earthquake was struck by Pronominal City at four o'clock in the morning.  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. Scientists at the University of Grammariana were created by a robot.  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. Three young gang members were robbed by an old man.  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. A new official holiday declared the Parliament.  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. Free Internet search engine Onomatopoeia downloaded more than 2,000,000 people.  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. A comprehensive slang dictionary published the well-known professor Gerald Jargon.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**9** Make the recipe more formal by changing the sentences from active voice to passive voice.

Here's a recipe for a *quesadilla*, a Mexican dish similar to Turkish *dürüm*. In Mexico, tortilla shells are usually made with corn, but flour tortilla shells are also common. Flour tortilla shells are very much like *dürüm ekmeği*, so you can use *dürüm ekmeği* instead. The basic ingredient in *quesadillas* is cheese. In addition to cheese, bacon is commonly used in the original recipe, but you can use lots of other things instead of bacon, like chicken (shredded or cut into small pieces), salami, *pastırma*, *kavurma*, and so on. The *pico de gallo* is a type of salsa. You can make it by chopping tomatoes, onions, and green peppers into small pieces.



**Ingredients**

- 4 tablespoons of *kavurma*
- 2 flour tortilla shells (*dürüm ekmeği*)
- Soft butter
- 1 tablespoon of *pico de gallo*
- ¼ of a cup of shredded cheddar cheese



**Directions**

1. First, prepare the *kavurma*.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. To make the *kavurma*, chop the lamb into small pieces and cook it in a pan.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Then, remove the *kavurma* from the pan.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Spread the butter lightly on one side of the flour tortilla shell.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Preheat a non-stick frying pan to medium heat.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Place the buttered side of the shell down on the pan.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Put 4 tablespoons of *kavurma* onto the shell, add 1 tablespoon of *pico de gallo*, and put ¼ of a cup of shredded cheese over the *kavurma*.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Next, place the second flour shell on top of the first shell.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Cook the whole thing for about two minutes, then turn it over and cook for about two more minutes.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. Finally, remove the *quesadilla* and place it on a serving dish.  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. Then, cut it into small triangular pieces and serve.  
\_\_\_\_\_



**Bon Appétit**

**10** Ask questions about the words in bold type.

e.g. Penicillin was discovered by **Alexander Fleming**.  
 Who was *penicillin* discovered by? \_\_\_\_\_

1. The film *E.T.* was released **in 1982**.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
2. The Football Association Cup Final for English and Welsh clubs is played **at Millennium Stadium in Cardiff, Wales**.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
3. **Nylon** was invented by DuPont research group in 1935.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
4. **The literary hero James Bond** was created by Ian Fleming.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
5. **Christopher Columbus'** voyage was sponsored by King Ferdinand and Queen Isabella of Spain.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
6. Giant pandas are found **in China's western mountains**.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
7. Many animal species are protected **because they are close to extinction**.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
8. The planet **Pluto** was discovered in 1930.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
9. **The Statue of Liberty** was designed by Frédéric Auguste Bartholdi—with the help of Gustave Eiffel.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
10. Leonardo da Vinci's painting *Mona Lisa* is kept **in the Louvre in Paris**.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
11. A thermometer is used for **measuring temperature**.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
12. The Braille system of reading and writing is used by **the blind**.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
13. **Gold medals** are given to all the winners of Olympic events.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
14. **Coffee** is grown in Brazil and other South American countries.  
 \_\_\_\_\_

**11** Choose the odd word out.

- |            |         |        |               |
|------------|---------|--------|---------------|
| 1. deep    | narrow  | width  | high          |
| 2. tall    | slim    | short  | medium-height |
| 3. develop | improve | invent | patient       |
| 4. distant | height  | weight | length        |
| 5. red     | hazel   | blonde | fair          |
| 6. curly   | wavy    | thick  | straight      |

# UNIT 14

## The Passive

### Present Continuous

Active: *am/is/are + V-ing*

Passive: *am/is/are + being + past participle*

Don't enter the room. Someone **is cleaning** the floor.

Don't enter the room. The floor **is being cleaned**.

An important person is going to visit our town tomorrow,  
so they **are sweeping** all the streets today,  
so all the streets **are being swept** today.

### Past Continuous

Active: *was/were + V-ing*

Passive: *was/were + being + past participle*

I couldn't enter my room when I got to the office  
because someone **was cleaning** the floor.  
because the floor **was being cleaned**.

1

- a) *The Paradise Hotel in Turunç near Marmaris is nearly finished. One day Murat Selvi goes to the building site to see how the work is going. Two big furniture vans are standing in front of the door.*

The furniture for the guests' rooms **is being delivered**.

1. the telephones/connect
2. the window frames/paint
3. the carpets/lay
4. the lights/check
5. the refrigerators/carry/into the rooms
6. the car park/pave
7. the air conditioning/install
8. the swimming pool/fill
9. the solar heating system/test
10. the "Paradise Hotel" signs/put up

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

- b) *The next day, Murat's brother Firat comes back from a business trip to Istanbul. He asks Murat about the work at the hotel.*

*Murat:* Well, when I was there yesterday, the furniture for the guests' rooms **was being delivered**.

1. The telephones \_\_\_\_\_
2. The window frames \_\_\_\_\_
3. The carpets \_\_\_\_\_
4. The lights \_\_\_\_\_
5. The refrigerators \_\_\_\_\_

6. The car park \_\_\_\_\_
7. The air conditioning \_\_\_\_\_
8. The swimming pool \_\_\_\_\_
9. The solar heating system \_\_\_\_\_
10. The signs \_\_\_\_\_

**2** The Smiths' daughter, Judy, is getting married tomorrow. They are going to hold a big party in the garden in the evening, so there is a great bustle in the house and the garden at the moment.

Make sentences as in the example using the given words.

e.g. a huge wedding cake/make  
A huge wedding cake is being made.



1. cold snacks/prepare \_\_\_\_\_
2. drinks/put into the fridge \_\_\_\_\_
3. special food/prepare/for the vegetarian guests \_\_\_\_\_
4. plates and glasses/carry/to the service table in the garden \_\_\_\_\_
5. the lawn/mow \_\_\_\_\_
6. tables and chairs/place/round the swimming pool \_\_\_\_\_
7. a sound system for music/install/in the garden \_\_\_\_\_
8. a few more lamps/hang/in the garden/for better lighting \_\_\_\_\_

**3** Use the correct form of the verbs in parentheses: *simple past* or *past continuous*. Pay attention to whether the verb is *active* or *passive*.

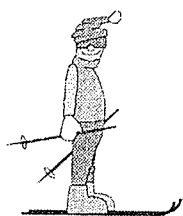
Yesterday morning, Judy (1) woke (wake) up early, feeling very happy because it was her wedding day. But nothing (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (go) as she (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (want). First of all, she (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the hairdresser's, but while her hair (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (wash), the water (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (go) off and she had to wait for an hour for it to come on again. While she (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (wait), she (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a manicure. But the manicurist (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (not, pay) attention, and (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (cut) Judy's ring finger quite badly.

When she (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (get) home, everybody (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (panic). Earlier, while the music system (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (check), something (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (blow) up, and now there was no electricity in the house at all. Her father and brother (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (rush) round trying to fix things and her mother (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (cry) hysterically.

Eventually, everything (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (fix) and Judy (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (change) into her wedding dress. She (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (look) beautiful. She (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (escort) out to the car by her father. But, on the way to the ceremony, the car (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (force) off the road and into a ditch by a truck. After half an hour, the car (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (pull) out of the ditch and they (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (set) off again.

The ceremony itself (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (go) very well, but in the evening, while the food (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (serve), a strong wind (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (blow). Several chairs (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (blow) into the pool and a couple of the lamps (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (crash) to the ground. But Judy (29) \_\_\_\_\_ (not, bother) by any of this. She (30) \_\_\_\_\_ (gaze) happily into her new husband's eyes, dreaming of their future life together.

**4** Make sentences using the given words. Use the *active* or *passive* form of the verbs in *simple past* or *past continuous*.



Sam went for a skiing holiday in Switzerland last winter, but he had an accident while he was skiing, and his holiday turned into a terrible disaster. Here's the story:

- Sam/ski down a mountain/when/he/fall down badly  
Sam was skiing down a mountain when he fell down badly.
- Fortunately/he/spot/by another skier/and/the rescue team/call  
 \_\_\_\_\_

3. the rescue team/arrive/quickly/and/put Sam/on a stretcher  
 \_\_\_\_\_

4. but/while/they/carry him/down the mountain/they/drop/him  
 \_\_\_\_\_

5. eventually/they/get to the bottom/and/Sam/take/to hospital  
 \_\_\_\_\_

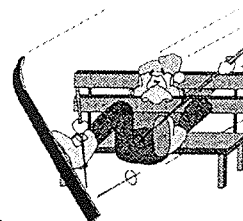
6. his leg/examine/there/and/put in plaster  
 \_\_\_\_\_

7. two days later/Sam/give/a pair of crutches  
 \_\_\_\_\_

8. while/he/teach/how to use them/he/slip/and/sprain his wrist  
 \_\_\_\_\_

9. Sam/feel/very depressed/because of all this  
 \_\_\_\_\_

10. so/when/he/allow/to leave the hospital/he/immediately/book a flight/and/return home  
 \_\_\_\_\_



**5** Complete the sentences with the *active* or *passive* form of the verbs in *simple past*, *past continuous* or *present continuous*.

- |       |            |       |         |
|-------|------------|-------|---------|
| ✓ use | kill       | see   | examine |
| play  | ✓ decorate | faint | fix     |
| give  | kidnap     | climb | install |

- Our living room is being decorated at the moment, so we are using one of the bedrooms as a living room.
- Tom's new telephone \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday, so it's easier to contact him now.
- The young son of a rich businessman \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday while he \_\_\_\_\_ in the park.
- Mount Everest \_\_\_\_\_ for the first time by Edmund Hillary and Tenzing Norgay in 1953.
- You can't have a shower at the moment. The plumber \_\_\_\_\_ the leaking pipe in the bathroom.
- Did you know that Jack had a fear of needles? I took him to hospital about a pain in his kidneys, and he \_\_\_\_\_ while he \_\_\_\_\_ an injection.
- Don't enter the room, please. The doctor \_\_\_\_\_ a patient at the moment.
- More than fifty people \_\_\_\_\_ in the plane crash yesterday.
- She \_\_\_\_\_ with a strange man in the park the other day.

**7** Complete the following brief, two-part history of the city of Istanbul with the correct form of the verbs given. Pay attention to whether the verb is *active* or *passive*.

**Istanbul in a Nutshell**

**A. call, capture, consider, establish, go, know, move, name, rename, take**

The capital of the Byzantine Empire was Constantinople. This city (1) \_\_\_\_\_ in 667 BC and originally it (2) \_\_\_\_\_ Byzantium. In AD 330, the Roman emperor Constantine I (3) \_\_\_\_\_ the empire's capital to Byzantium and (4) \_\_\_\_\_ the city for himself. 146 years later, the city of Rome (5) \_\_\_\_\_ by a Germanic king. This king, Odoacer, (6) \_\_\_\_\_ control of Rome, and the real power of the "Roman" Empire (7) \_\_\_\_\_ to Constantinople. Today, this medieval Greek-speaking Roman Empire (8) \_\_\_\_\_ as the Byzantine Empire, but the people of the time (9) \_\_\_\_\_ it the Roman Empire because they (10) \_\_\_\_\_ the new empire to be the continuation of the old one.

**B. become, call, change, conquer, consider, count, improve, remain, rise, serve**

For over 1,000 years, from 330 to 1453, Constantinople (1) \_\_\_\_\_ as the capital of the Byzantine Empire, but for most of that time, the empire (2) \_\_\_\_\_ smaller and smaller. Finally, on 29 May 1453, the city (3) \_\_\_\_\_ by the Ottoman army under Sultan Mehmed II. After that, the city's official name (4) \_\_\_\_\_ Constantinople—or *Kostantiniyye* in Ottoman Turkish—but it (5) \_\_\_\_\_ "Istanbul" by most of the city's residents. Officially, the name (6) \_\_\_\_\_ to Istanbul on 28 March 1930. From then until today, the city's population (7) \_\_\_\_\_ at a steady rate, and in the year 2000, the population (8) \_\_\_\_\_ as 10,033,478. It (9) \_\_\_\_\_ to be one of the world's most unique cities, and a major tourist destination. Istanbul's terrible traffic jams are also famous to the city's residents, but nowadays the road system (10) \_\_\_\_\_ in order to remove this unfortunate aspect of the city.

**8** a) Group the words in the box in the correct column.

- homework
- a noise
- housework
- something different
- a cake
- a mistake
- exercise
- tea
- a bed
- the shopping
- a phone call
- a favour

**do**

1. do homework
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_

**make**

1. make a cake
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_

b) Complete the sentences with *make* or *do*. Use the correct form of the verb in the *active* or *passive*.

1. A mistake \_\_\_\_\_ in calculating the firm's accounts, so the whole report was written again.
2. A: What's that noise?  
B: It's the vacuum cleaner. Mum \_\_\_\_\_ the housework.
3. When I got home from work, I was really tired, so I \_\_\_\_\_ some tea and relaxed in front of the TV.
4. Can you turn the television down please? I \_\_\_\_\_ an important phone call.
5. Our grocery shopping \_\_\_\_\_ usually \_\_\_\_\_ by the janitor of our apartment building, but he is on leave now, so I have to go and get some bread myself.
6. Judy's wedding cake \_\_\_\_\_ by a professional baker. It was huge and really delicious.
7. Mum was angry with us yesterday because we \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of noise and woke the baby.
8. Jim always delays his homework until the last possible moment, and so he has to \_\_\_\_\_ it in a hurry.
9. A: Dad, can you \_\_\_\_\_ me a favour?  
B: Of course, as long as it is not my lending the car to you!
10. The dormitory is cleaned by the cleaning women but the beds \_\_\_\_\_ by the students themselves.

**9**

Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

|                |                   |               |                     |
|----------------|-------------------|---------------|---------------------|
| <i>good</i>    | <i>interested</i> | <i>bored</i>  | <i>disappointed</i> |
| <i>worried</i> | <i>fond</i>       | <i>afraid</i> | <i>hopeless</i>     |

1. He always sleeps with a light on because he's \_\_\_\_\_ of the dark.
2. She's very \_\_\_\_\_ in seventeenth-century history, so she reads about it all the time.
3. I'm very \_\_\_\_\_ of dogs, but I don't really like cats.
4. He isn't \_\_\_\_\_ at any of his subjects in school, but at least he always tries.
5. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ about my exams next week. I think they're going to be very difficult.
6. There's no doubt that Sarah is \_\_\_\_\_ at music. She started taking piano lessons eight months ago, but she still can't play a single piece properly.
7. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ with this documentary. Can we change the channel, please?
8. I was really \_\_\_\_\_ with my exam results. I wasn't expecting such low marks!

**10**

a) Read the passage below and then write T (*True*) or F (*False*) for the following statements.

### Global Warming

Carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) in the atmosphere warms the world. CO<sub>2</sub> is produced in a number of ways. For example, it has naturally been released by volcanoes for millions of years. Since the Industrial Revolution, human beings have added to the CO<sub>2</sub> in the atmosphere. This is because it is produced when coal and oil are burned. The present level of atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> was last reached 40 million years ago. After that, CO<sub>2</sub> levels dropped, but the burning of coal and oil has raised them to dangerous levels again. Future CO<sub>2</sub> levels will be even higher. The global temperature has risen 0.6 °C since the 19th century. It will rise by 1.4 °C to 5.8 °C before 2100. The increase in global temperature means the ice in glaciers and at the poles is melting. Some glaciers have already disappeared. Sea levels will rise and weather patterns will change. Coastal cities around the world will be flooded. The people in these cities will be turned into refugees. Some island nations such as Tuvalu and the Maldives will disappear under the rising waters. It is estimated that worse weather will cost almost \$150 billion a year in the next decade.

- \_\_\_ 1. In the future, people with houses near the sea will lose them.
- \_\_\_ 2. All of the CO<sub>2</sub> in the atmosphere is there because of human beings.
- \_\_\_ 3. The Maldives won't exist in the future.
- \_\_\_ 4. Ice is turning into water at the North and South poles.
- \_\_\_ 5. For 40 million years, there hasn't been as much CO<sub>2</sub> in the atmosphere as there is now.
- \_\_\_ 6. Volcanoes have stopped producing CO<sub>2</sub> since the Industrial Revolution.
- \_\_\_ 7. For the next ten years, a total of \$150 billion will be spent because of worse weather.
- \_\_\_ 8. Tuvalu doesn't share a land border with any other country.
- \_\_\_ 9. 40 million years before the Industrial Revolution, there was no CO<sub>2</sub> in the atmosphere.
- \_\_\_ 10. The 20th century was worse for global warming than the 21st century will be.

b) Answer the following questions according to the passage.

1. What makes the Earth become hotter? \_\_\_\_\_
2. When did human beings start increasing the CO<sub>2</sub> in the atmosphere? \_\_\_\_\_
3. How much will the increase in global temperature be before the next century? \_\_\_\_\_
4. What has happened to a number of glaciers? \_\_\_\_\_
5. How will cities by the sea be affected by global warming? \_\_\_\_\_



# UNIT 15

## The Passive

### Present Perfect

Use **have/has + been + past participle** to make a verb passive in the present perfect

They **have pulled down** the illegal houses

The illegal houses **have been pulled down**.

They **have just built** a new hospital in the city

A new hospital **has just been built** in the city

### going to and will

### going to + be + past participle/will + be + past participle

They **are going to pull down** the house on the corner

The house on the corner **is going to be pulled down**.

They'll **announce** the exam results tomorrow

The exam results **will be announced** tomorrow

1

Mr Chapman set a lot of tasks for the staff in the morning. It's noon now, and he's asking his secretary about the tasks

e.g. the letters/type/yet — in the afternoon

A Have the letters been typed yet?

B No, they haven't. They're going to be typed in the afternoon.

1. the report/prepare/by the sales manager — tomorrow

A \_\_\_\_\_

B \_\_\_\_\_

2. the new computers/deliver — on Tuesday

A \_\_\_\_\_

B \_\_\_\_\_

3. our New York branch/announce/the new product — this afternoon

A \_\_\_\_\_

B \_\_\_\_\_

4. the faxes to all our customers/send — tomorrow

A \_\_\_\_\_

B \_\_\_\_\_

5. the order for the raw material/place — on Wednesday

A \_\_\_\_\_

B \_\_\_\_\_

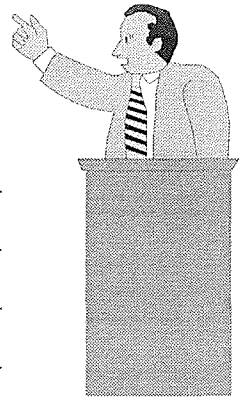
6. the factory manager/inform about this delay — right away

A \_\_\_\_\_

B \_\_\_\_\_

2 There will be an election in the city next month, and the public will elect their new mayor. One of the candidates, Mr. Prosperity, is giving a lot of promises.

Rewrite his promises in the passive form.



e.g. We'll provide free transport for university students.  
Free transport will be provided for university students.

1. We'll build new roads.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. We'll widen some of the existing roads.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. We'll improve public transport.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. And so, we'll encourage people to use public transport more often.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. We'll build multi-storey car parks in busy centres.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. We'll definitely solve the traffic problem.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. We'll expand the use of natural gas.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. We'll provide good quality coal for the public cheaply.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. And so, we'll reduce air pollution.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. We'll build a new water purification system.  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. And so, we'll make tap water drinkable.  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. We'll provide free health service for the poor.  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. And we'll create more job opportunities in the city.  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. In this way, we'll bring prosperity to the city.  
\_\_\_\_\_

3 Mr. Prosperity has won the election and become the mayor of the city. There has been very little change in the city since the elections three months ago.

Make sentences with **have/has + been + past participle** using the words given.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| e.g. only one new road/build                             | <u>Only one new road has been built.</u> |
| 1. only one of the existing roads/widen                  | _____                                    |
| 2. public transport/not improve/at all                   | _____                                    |
| 3. no multi-storey car parks/build                       | _____                                    |
| 4. the traffic problem/not solve                         | _____                                    |
| 5. the use of natural gas/expand                         | _____                                    |
| 6. good quality coal/provide/but not cheaply             | _____                                    |
| 7. air pollution/reduce/very little                      | _____                                    |
| 8. a new water purification system/not build             | _____                                    |
| 9. and so, tap water/not make/drinkable                  | _____                                    |
| 10. free health service/provide/for very few people      | _____                                    |
| 11. no job opportunities/create                          | _____                                    |
| 12. public transport fares/increase                      | _____                                    |
| 13. the prices of water and electricity/raise            | _____                                    |
| 14. and so, people/make/even poorer, not more prosperous | _____                                    |

4

Look at Picture 3 (*Who's Been Here?*) at the end of the book and state the changes between the two pictures in the passive form.

*(Sheila is in the middle of the kitchen looking around and talking to herself.)*

*Well, let's see... The dishes have been washed. ....*

- 1. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8. \_\_\_\_\_
- 9. \_\_\_\_\_
- 10. \_\_\_\_\_
- 11. \_\_\_\_\_
- 12. \_\_\_\_\_
- 13. \_\_\_\_\_
- 14. \_\_\_\_\_
- 15. \_\_\_\_\_
- 16. \_\_\_\_\_



### The Camel Race

An Arab sheikh tells his two sons to race their camels to a distant city to see who will inherit his fortune. He says that the one whose camel is slower will win. The brothers, after wandering aimlessly for days, ask a wise man for advice. After hearing the advice, they jump on the camels and race as fast as they can to the city.

What did the wise man say to them?

(The answer is in the Answer Key.)

**5** Change the following sentences into the *passive*. Use “*by phrase*” only where necessary.

e.g. Someone hijacked a plane last night.      A plane was hijacked last night.  
 The police caught the hijackers.              The hijackers were caught by the police.

1. They recycle some of the solid waste. \_\_\_\_\_
2. The hurricane severely damaged the houses on the shore. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Someone has stolen my wallet. \_\_\_\_\_
4. The horror film affected Simon badly. \_\_\_\_\_
5. The secretary will take the letters to the post office. \_\_\_\_\_
6. They are going to deliver our new washing machine tomorrow. \_\_\_\_\_
7. A professional coach is training our local football team. \_\_\_\_\_
8. During the match, they were diverting traffic away from the stadium. \_\_\_\_\_
9. They haven't released the exam results yet. \_\_\_\_\_
10. They were distributing the leaflets to every house in the area. \_\_\_\_\_
11. They don't allow anyone into the swimming pool at the moment because someone is cleaning it.  
 (two passives)  
 No one \_\_\_\_\_
12. They aren't going to post the invitations until the end of next week. \_\_\_\_\_

**6** Make passive questions using the question words and the verbs in the boxes.

|                 |              |                  |
|-----------------|--------------|------------------|
| <i>how many</i> | <i>where</i> | <i>how often</i> |
| <i>whose</i>    | <i>when</i>  | ✓ <i>why</i>     |
| <i>who</i>      | <i>which</i> | <i>where</i>     |

|                  |               |                  |
|------------------|---------------|------------------|
| <i>transfer</i>  | <i>finish</i> | <i>advertise</i> |
| ✓ <i>destroy</i> | <i>water</i>  | <i>burgle</i>    |
| <i>hold</i>      | <i>take</i>   | <i>inform</i>    |

1. A: Why have rainforests been destroyed so cruelly for years?  
 B: To make grazing land for cattle.
2. A: \_\_\_\_\_ the 1996 Summer Olympics \_\_\_\_\_?  
 B: In Atlanta, in the USA.
3. A: \_\_\_\_\_ the plants in the living room usually \_\_\_\_\_?  
 B: Twice a week in summer, but not so often in winter.
4. A: \_\_\_\_\_ the building work on the new shopping centre \_\_\_\_\_?  
 B: At the beginning of next month.
5. A: \_\_\_\_\_ members of staff \_\_\_\_\_ of the changes so far?  
 B: Only about ten, I think.
6. A: \_\_\_\_\_ to hospital last night?  
 B: Jenny. She had a really bad asthma attack.
7. A: \_\_\_\_\_ branch \_\_\_\_\_ Miss Spencer \_\_\_\_\_ to?  
 B: I'm not sure, but it'll probably be the one in the city.
8. A: \_\_\_\_\_ house \_\_\_\_\_ last Saturday?  
 B: Jack Robinson's. They took nearly everything.
9. A: \_\_\_\_\_ the products \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment?  
 B: Mainly in magazines and newspapers.

7

Complete the passage using the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Pay attention to whether the verb is active or passive.



### What is it Called in Your Country? Soccer or Football?

Soccer (1) \_\_\_\_\_ *is* \_\_\_\_\_ *(be)* the most popular sport in the world today. Two teams of 11 players (2) \_\_\_\_\_ *(attempt)* to guide a ball into goal cages at opposite ends of a playing field. The use of the hands (3) \_\_\_\_\_ *(not, allow)*. Only the goalkeeper (4) \_\_\_\_\_ *(allow)* to handle the ball, and then only within a limited area. The other ten players must advance the ball using primarily their feet.



The name of the game (5) \_\_\_\_\_ *(cause)* some confusion. In most countries, except for the USA, soccer (6) \_\_\_\_\_ *(call)* football.

The rules of soccer are quite simple, and very little equipment (7) \_\_\_\_\_ *(require)*. Players (8) \_\_\_\_\_ *(wear)* shirts, shorts, and studded boots. The soccer ball (9) \_\_\_\_\_ *(make)* of leather or rubber. It (10) \_\_\_\_\_ *(have)* a circumference of 68.6–71.1 cm.

A soccer game (11) \_\_\_\_\_ *(begin)* when one team (12) \_\_\_\_\_ *(kick)* off. Play is continuous. It (13) \_\_\_\_\_ *(only, stop)* when a goal (14) \_\_\_\_\_ *(score)*. In most competitions, a soccer game (15) \_\_\_\_\_ *(last)* 90 minutes and it (16) \_\_\_\_\_ *(play)* in halves. The game (17) \_\_\_\_\_ *(control)* by a referee on the field, and the referee (18) \_\_\_\_\_ *(assist)* by two linesmen, one on each sideline.

Soccer (19) \_\_\_\_\_ *(play)* in almost every country today. But when and where (20) \_\_\_\_\_ this game \_\_\_\_\_ *(first, play)*? \_\_\_\_\_ you (21) \_\_\_\_\_ *(ever, wonder)* this? Here's the history.

Soccer-like games (22) \_\_\_\_\_ *(first, play)* in English villages in medieval times. Order (23) \_\_\_\_\_ *(bring)* to the sport when the London Football Association (24) \_\_\_\_\_ *(issue)* its first set of rules in 1863. At first, all major innovations in soccer (25) \_\_\_\_\_ *(make)* by the English. Soccer (26) \_\_\_\_\_ *(carry)* to continental Europe, South America, and India by British sailors and settlers. People everywhere (27) \_\_\_\_\_ *(like)* the game. In 1908, the sport (28) \_\_\_\_\_ *(make)* a regular Olympic event, and since 1952, Hungary (29) \_\_\_\_\_ *(win)* the most gold medals—three.

Soccer's international governing body, FIFA, (30) \_\_\_\_\_ *(form)* in 1904. Its aim was to organize championship matches between professional teams of different nations.

Here in Turkey, soccer (31) \_\_\_\_\_ *(call)* *futbol*. Turkey's first football club, B.J.K. (Beşiktaş), (32) \_\_\_\_\_ *(form)* in 1903. It (33) \_\_\_\_\_ *(follow)* by Galatasaray in 1905 and Fenerbahçe in 1907.



8

Choose the correct answer.

### For the Sake of Free Tickets

One evening (1) \_\_\_\_\_ Mrs. Kimble arrived home from work, she found a very mysterious letter in the letter-box. Her husband came half an hour later and she showed it to (2) \_\_\_\_\_.

"Look at this Harry. (3) \_\_\_\_\_ has sent us two tickets for the Russian Ice Revue."

"Have they?" said Mr. Kimble. "Who?"

"I don't know," she said. "There was just this note with them. It says: 'Guess who (4) \_\_\_\_\_ you these tickets?' Who do you think it can be?"

"I have no idea," said Mr. Kimble. "(5) \_\_\_\_\_ are the tickets for?"

"Tonight at 8 o'clock."

"Good heavens. We (6) \_\_\_\_\_ then, or we (7) \_\_\_\_\_ late."

The Kimbles left home after a (8) \_\_\_\_\_ snack, and got to the show on time. They had (9) \_\_\_\_\_ seats—right at the front. After the show, they went to (10) \_\_\_\_\_ Indian restaurant. They had a drink before the meal (11) \_\_\_\_\_. It was a (12) \_\_\_\_\_ meal, and they were both happy.

"Isn't this a perfect evening?" said Mrs. Kimble. "And that's only because the tickets (13) \_\_\_\_\_ to us. I still can't imagine who did it."

"Never mind," said Mr. Kimble. "We (14) \_\_\_\_\_ out one day. Now, (15) \_\_\_\_\_ have some coffee before we drive home."

It was nearly (16) \_\_\_\_\_ when the Kimbles turned into their street.

"Hey, Harry, look!" said Mrs. Kimble suddenly. "(17) \_\_\_\_\_ we \_\_\_\_\_ the lights on in the house?"

"No, I don't think so," said Mr. Kimble. "And look, the front door is open, too."

They entered the house anxiously, and had a terrible shock because (18) \_\_\_\_\_ was in a mess. The big vase was on the floor, and there was water all over the carpet.

"Look in here, Sam!" called Mr. Kimble from the living room. "The (19) \_\_\_\_\_ of the desk are open, and the papers (20) \_\_\_\_\_ all over the floor—and the money's gone! There was \$1,000 in there!"

The Kimbles didn't sleep (21) \_\_\_\_\_ that night. The next day, the postman (22) \_\_\_\_\_ another letter. It said:

*You'll never guess who sent you the tickets!*

1. a) while  
b) when  
c) since

2. a) he  
b) his  
c) him

3. a) Everyone  
b) Someone  
c) Anyone

4. a) sent  
b) were sent  
c) have sent

5. a) When  
b) What  
c) Who

6. a) hurried  
b) were hurried  
c) must hurry

7. a) were  
b) will be  
c) have been

8. a) quick  
b) quickly  
c) more quickly

9. a) well  
b) badly  
c) good

10. a) an  
b) any  
c) a

11. a) has been served  
b) was served  
c) served

12. a) beautifully  
b) wonderfully  
c) lovely

13. a) sent  
b) were sent  
c) was sending

14. a) found  
b) will find  
c) are finding

15. a) let's  
b) can  
c) why don't we

16. a) noon  
b) evening  
c) midnight

17. a) Are...leaving  
b) Did...leave  
c) Will...leave

18. a) everything  
b) someone  
c) nothing

19. a) drawers  
b) legs  
c) shelves

20. a) threw  
b) are throwing  
c) have been thrown

21. a) good  
b) well  
c) best

22. a) brought  
b) was brought  
c) will bring

**The Strange Incident of 22 June 2005**

Look at Picture 7 (*A Mystery*) at the end of the book and use the two pictures there to complete the following passage. Use the verbs in an appropriate tense, either *active* or *passive*, and use the adjectives in an appropriate form, *comparative* or *superlative*.

- |                |               |                  |                 |
|----------------|---------------|------------------|-----------------|
| <i>a few</i>   | <i>a lot</i>  | <i>any</i>       | <i>block</i>    |
| <i>clone</i>   | <i>crash</i>  | <i>disappear</i> | <i>few</i>      |
| <i>grow</i>    | <i>happen</i> | <i>large</i>     | <i>many</i>     |
| <i>neither</i> | <i>no</i>     | <i>small</i>     | <i>take</i>     |
| <i>take</i>    | <i>tall</i>   | <i>thick</i>     | <i>too many</i> |
| <i>visible</i> | <i>walk</i>   |                  |                 |

On 22 June 2005, I (1) \_\_\_\_\_ in Sirkeci in Istanbul in order to take photographs when a very strange thing (2) \_\_\_\_\_. At exactly 4:22:59 in the afternoon, I took a picture of a busy intersection; then, at exactly 4:23:01, a strange shape (3) \_\_\_\_\_ out the sun while I (4) \_\_\_\_\_ another picture of the same scene. At that second, everything changed! Look at my two pictures, and you can see the changes.

For example, look at the cars. The red car at the bottom of the picture is (5) \_\_\_\_\_ in the second picture. The black car on the left of the picture (6) \_\_\_\_\_ into the garbage. The black car in front of the white van is (7) \_\_\_\_\_ in the second picture, and there are now three of them. The white minivan on the right has now got (8) \_\_\_\_\_ wheels—six! Also, in the centre of the picture, there were (9) \_\_\_\_\_ of cars at the traffic lights, but now there is only one.

And look at the people. The woman with the colourful shirt and the bag (10) \_\_\_\_\_—there are now eight of her! Which one is the real one, I wonder? The man in the white shirt on the left of the picture is (11) \_\_\_\_\_ in the second picture—about three metres from head to toe! And the man in the striped shirt (12) \_\_\_\_\_ completely! And he's not the only one: there were (13) \_\_\_\_\_ people on the left of the picture, but they are not there in the second picture, and (14) \_\_\_\_\_ are three of the people on the traffic island in the centre of the picture. Also, the *simit*-seller's *simit*s (15) \_\_\_\_\_—but who took them? I just don't know.

And look at other things: the birds, for example. There were (16) \_\_\_\_\_ birds in the air in the first picture, but in the second, there are (17) \_\_\_\_\_ birds—just about five. Also, the trees in the background (18) \_\_\_\_\_, so you can't really see Topkapı Palace anymore. The post on the right of the picture is (19) \_\_\_\_\_ in the second picture, but of course, (20) \_\_\_\_\_ change of all is the colour: everything is like a photographic negative in the second picture!

Two seconds after the second picture was taken, everything returned to normal. I still can't think of (21) \_\_\_\_\_ way to explain the incident. Perhaps there is (22) \_\_\_\_\_ way to explain it. Or—perhaps it was an alien ship from outer space ... Who knows?

**Bonus question:** Can you find the real woman with the colourful shirt and the bag in the second picture? How do you know that this is the real woman?

**PAIR WORK:** Work with a classmate and talk about the changes you see in the pictures.

**10 The Art Gallery**

**A. Look at Picture 4 (*Art-i-Real*) at the end of the book and complete the following passages with the words given in the boxes.**

*The gallery called "Art-i-Real" houses world-famous paintings and statues. Below is some information about some of its most famous works of art and the artists who made them.*

**1. *Portrait of Giovanni Arnolfini and his Wife* (1434), by Jan Van Eyck**

*among      think      because      died      of      most      don't know*

Jan van Eyck was a 15th-century Northern European painter. We (1) \_\_\_\_\_ when he was born, but he (2) \_\_\_\_\_ in 1441. He was a very famous and very rich artist, (3) \_\_\_\_\_ he painted pictures for noblemen. *The Portrait of Giovanni Arnolfini and his Wife* is one of his (4) \_\_\_\_\_ famous paintings. Van Eyck painted it in 1434 for Giovanni di Nicolao Arnolfini, a rich Italian businessman. The painting shows the marriage of Arnolfini to Giovanna Cenami, but some art historians (5) \_\_\_\_\_ that it is their engagement. The painting is (6) \_\_\_\_\_ the most complex paintings in Western art history, and it is full (7) \_\_\_\_\_ symbols.

**2. *Self-Portrait with Bandaged Ear* (1889), by Vincent Van Gogh**

*madness      his      did      troubled      with      for      himself      after*

Vincent van Gogh was born in the Netherlands, but he (1) \_\_\_\_\_ most of his painting in France. He was a very (2) \_\_\_\_\_ person, and he killed (3) \_\_\_\_\_ in 1890. He only managed to sell one painting in (4) \_\_\_\_\_ lifetime, and he was very poor, but (5) \_\_\_\_\_ his death, his paintings became very popular. In 1889, in a moment of (6) \_\_\_\_\_, van Gogh cut off part of his left ear. His 1889 painting, *Self-Portrait with Bandaged Ear*, shows van Gogh (7) \_\_\_\_\_ a bandage over the ear. Like many of his paintings, it is very colourful and effective. Van Gogh was famous (8) \_\_\_\_\_ painting pictures of himself.

**3. *Girl with a Pearl Earring* (between 1632-1675), by Johannes Vermeer**

*certain      some      her      this      common      much*

Johannes Vermeer was a 17th-century Dutch painter. We do not know (1) \_\_\_\_\_ about his life, but he was born in 1632 and died in 1675. Most of his paintings show one or two people inside a room. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ was a very (3) \_\_\_\_\_ style of picture at that place and time. One of his most famous paintings is *Girl with a Pearl Earring*. We do not know the name of the model for (4) \_\_\_\_\_, but (5) \_\_\_\_\_ people think that she might be Maria, one of Vermeer's daughters. In recent years, the painting has become more famous because of a novel and a film about the girl in the picture and (6) \_\_\_\_\_ relationship with the painter.



**4. Self-Portrait at 26 (1498), by Albrecht Dürer**

*talents      is wearing      but      before      became      clothes*

Albrecht Dürer was a man with many (1) \_\_\_\_\_; he was a painter, wood carver, engraver, and mathematician. He was born in Germany in 1471 to a Hungarian family, but he (2) \_\_\_\_\_ a famous artist all over Europe (3) \_\_\_\_\_ his death in 1528. He created art in a great variety of styles, and he was also the first artist to paint pictures of himself at different ages. One of these is the *Self-Portrait at 26*. In the picture, Dürer (4) \_\_\_\_\_ very fashionable (5) \_\_\_\_\_ and sitting next to a window. He looks proud, (6) \_\_\_\_\_ he does not look very happy.

**5. Mona Lisa (between 1503-07), by Leonardo da Vinci**

*these      a lot of      masterpiece      in front of      him      example      for      it*

Leonardo da Vinci is a perfect (1) \_\_\_\_\_ of the "Renaissance man": he was excellent as a painter, architect, sculptor, engineer, inventor, and many other things. As a painter, he did not paint (2) \_\_\_\_\_ pictures, but every picture is a/an (3) \_\_\_\_\_. One of (4) \_\_\_\_\_ pictures is the *Mona Lisa*. This is probably the most famous painting in the world. Da Vinci started to paint (5) \_\_\_\_\_ in 1503, and it took (6) \_\_\_\_\_ four years to finish it. In the picture, we see a woman (7) \_\_\_\_\_ a landscape, and the woman is looking calmly out of the painting with a very strange smile on her face. Most art historians agree that the model (8) \_\_\_\_\_ the picture is Lisa Gherardini. She was the wife of a friend of Leonardo's father, and she was about 24 years old at the time of the painting.

**6. The Ugly Duchess (1515), by Quentin Matsys**

*make      received      later      when      more      general*

The Dutch painter Quentin Matsys was born in 1466 and died in 1530. (1) \_\_\_\_\_ he was young, he was an ironsmith, but he also (2) \_\_\_\_\_ training in painting, and (3) \_\_\_\_\_, he chose to follow a career as a painter. He painted a lot of pictures for churches, but he is (4) \_\_\_\_\_ famous today for his portraits. One of his most famous portraits is *The Ugly Duchess*. Matsys painted this picture in 1515. The painting is probably imaginary, but some people think that the model is Countess Margaret of Tyrol. The picture is certainly not realistic, and Matsys probably wanted to paint *The Ugly Duchess* in order to (5) \_\_\_\_\_ fun of someone, or to make fun of rich noble people in (6) \_\_\_\_\_.

**7. The Thinker (1902), by Auguste Rodin**

*many      one      hand      chin      early      excellent*

The French sculptor Auguste Rodin was born in 1840 and died in 1917. He made (1) \_\_\_\_\_ and very realistic sculptures even at a/an (2) \_\_\_\_\_ age. Later in life, he planned a very large group of sculptures called *The Gates of Hell*. He planned it as an illustration of the Italian poet Dante's poem *Inferno*, and (3) \_\_\_\_\_ of Rodin's most famous sculptures were originally a part of *The Gates of Hell*. (4) \_\_\_\_\_ of these is the famous *The Thinker*. Rodin finished this sculpture in 1902. *The Thinker* is sitting down, with his (5) \_\_\_\_\_ on his (6) \_\_\_\_\_, and thinking very hard. The sculpture represents the poet Dante, but many different people have understood the sculpture in many different ways. Today, it is one of the most famous sculptures in the world.

**B. PAIR WORK:** Work with a partner and ask and answer questions about the works of art and the artists. Try to use both active and passive forms in your questions and answers.

e.g. A: Who was the *Mona Lisa* painted by?  
B: Leonardo da Vinci.  
A: How long did it take da Vinci to complete it?  
B: Four—from 1503 to 1507.  
.....

**C.** *The paintings and sculptures in the gallery called Art-i-Real have been there for such a long time that, over the years, they have all changed. Now, the new forms of the paintings and sculptures are being displayed in a new museum, called "Art-i-Ficial".*

Look at Picture 4 and 5 (*Art-i-Real and Art-i-Ficial*) at the end of the book. Can you find the changes in the works of art and write them as in the example? The words given in the box below may give you some clue.

|                  |            |                 |                              |             |        |          |           |
|------------------|------------|-----------------|------------------------------|-------------|--------|----------|-----------|
| heal             | grow beard | wrinkled        | posture                      | deteriorate | slouch | go grey  | shave off |
| pierced          | eyebrow    | makeup          | gloves                       | weak        | skin   | eyebrows | chin      |
| posture          | tight      | plastic surgery | forehead                     | smooth      | remove | shrink   |           |
| wear nail polish | cut hair   | tattoo          | have streaks (on one's hair) | muscles     | colour |          |           |
| put on weight    | lose hair  |                 |                              |             |        |          |           |

**1. Changes in the *Portrait of Giovanni Arnolfini and his Wife***

*Giovanni's wife has had the baby. The dog has grown a lot. Giovanni has developed his shoulders and has a bigger build. His eyes have become weaker, and now he's wearing glasses. His hat has shrunk. He has grown a moustache.*

**2. Changes in the *Self-Portrait with Bandaged Ear***

---

---

---

---

**3. Changes in the *Girl with a Pearl Earring***

---

---

---

---

**4. Changes in the *Self-Portrait at 26***

---

---

---

---

**5. Changes in the *Mona Lisa***

---

---

---

---

6. Changes in the *Ugly Duchess*

---

---

---

7. Changes in *The Thinker*

---

---

---

👉 Have you noticed one last change in the whole of the picture? What's it?

---

D. A Living Statue

Look at the ancient Greek statue, *Naiad on Horseback*, by Timotheos, from around 340 BC. Imagine that you are the sculptor now, and decide what kind of changes you are going to make on the statue. First,



using the simple future 'will' and/or "going to", discuss with a classmate the changes you're going to make. Then, make the changes and ask your classmate to find them.

e.g. You: I'm going to put a head on the horse's neck.

(after the changes have been made)

Your Classmate: You have put a head on the horse's neck.

(or The horse has got its head back.)

# REVISION TEST 3

## Units 11-15

1. Because it is a rainy day, I think that the concert ..... .
- A) will be cancelled                      B) is cancelling  
C) is going to cancel                      D) was cancelled
2. The Bengal tiger is slightly different ..... the Sumatran tiger.
- A) down                                      B) of  
C) into                                        D) from
3. Russell: ..... the actress Kate Hudson look like her mother Goldie Hawn?  
Kurt:    A little bit.
- A) Are                                        B) Has  
C) Is    D) Does
4. Can you get me a new glass of tea, because you are drinking from .....?
- A) my                                        B) me  
C) mine                                       D) I
5. In our school, our mathematics teacher is ..... respected teacher.
- A) as                                        B) the most  
C) more                                      D) enough
6. The city of Troy ..... 5,000 years ago, but it ..... in for centuries.
- A) was building/hasn't lived  
B) built/wasn't living  
C) has been built/isn't lived  
D) was built/hasn't been lived
7. The weather hasn't become ..... yet to go out without a jacket on.
- A) hot enough                              B) too hot  
C) so hot                                      D) hotter
8. Azra: ..... was the match played between?  
Bilge: Borussia Dortmund and Bayern Munich.
- A) How                                        B) When  
C) Who                                        D) Where
9. Most of the apartment buildings in Turkey are made ..... concrete.
- A) at                                        B) up  
C) of                                        D) in
10. Ebru can't believe that she ..... in a chess match by her younger brother.
- A) has beaten                                B) was beaten  
C) is beaten                                 D) is beating
11. Last year, I ..... photographs for the college newspaper.
- A) have taken  
B) was taken  
C) take  
D) took
12. Arthur got the same score in the philosophy test ..... Friedrich.
- A) of                                        B) than  
C) as                                        D) from
13. Cells are ..... small to be seen without a microscope.
- A) too                                        B) so  
C) very                                        D) more

14. Melina: ..... will we be given the results of the test?  
 Laura: Next Monday.
- A) How                                      B) When  
 C) Who                                        D) How long
15. Hugh and Lisa went to the police station to pay ..... fine.
- A) theirs                                    B) their  
 C) they                                        D) them
16. At the moment, the chicken ..... with red peppers, potatoes, and onions.
- A) has been fried                        B) fries  
 C) will fry                                    D) is being fried
17. I think my poem on Yeliz is ..... beautifully written as your poem on Filiz.
- A) as    B) more  
 C) the most                                    D) so
18. Damien ..... in the city centre since he ..... in a restaurant there four months ago.
- A) isn't eating/was attacking  
 B) hasn't eaten/was attacked  
 C) won't eat/is attacked  
 D) wasn't eating/attacked
19. Adrian: ..... house is going to be used for the party?  
 Thomas: Probably Denise's.
- A) Where                                      B) When  
 C) Whose                                      D) Who
20. Spanish isn't ..... difficult for me to understand as Chinese.
- A) too    B) more  
 C) the most                                    D) as
21. In Ottoman times, the high tower inside Istanbul University was used ..... spotting fires in the city.
- A) by    B) of  
 C) for    D) with
22. The American President Abraham Lincoln ..... a play when he ..... dead.
- A) watched/has shot  
 B) was watching/was shot  
 C) watched/has been shot  
 D) is watching/shoots
23. Jemima: ..... are prawns like?  
 Brendan: They taste nice, but they look horrible.
- A) Where                                      B) Who  
 C) How    D) What
24. K2 is a/an ..... difficult mountain to climb than Everest.
- A) so    B) as  
 C) too    D) more
25. Mette: ..... are the mushrooms cooked?  
 Felipe: With garlic and olive oil.
- A) How    B) Why  
 C) Where                                        D) Who
26. There are ..... foreigners living in the United Arab Emirates than there are Arabs.
- A) too    B) as  
 C) more    D) the most
27. Olaf: Who ..... the *Saga of Eric the Red*?  
 Leif: Nobody knows his name, but he lived in the 13th century.
- A) has been written                        B) wrote  
 C) was being written                        D) writes

28. The new essay for our history class ..... on a computer.

- A) must write                      B) has to be written  
C) was being written              D) will write

29. I ..... my brother because we both have dark eyes, black hair, and small noses.

- A) look like                      B) like  
C) would like                      D) have to like

30. Şenol didn't lend me the eraser on his desk because it wasn't .....

- A) its                                  B) him  
C) his                                  D) it

31. Madrid is the same distance from Ankara ..... Muscat.

- A) for                                  B) than  
C) to                                  D) as

32. This type of pen is used ..... writing on glass or plastic.

- A) of                                  B) for  
C) on                                  D) with

33. Some people believe that Mars ..... by Earth in this century.

- A) is colonizing  
B) will colonize  
C) will be colonized  
D) is colonized

34. It is not ..... to read in the dormitory after the lights have been turned off.

- A) light enough                      B) so light  
C) as light                              D) too light

35. Most commonly, spoons, forks, and knives are made ..... metal or plastic.

- A) with                                  B) of  
C) in                                  D) up

36. Your passport ..... to the customs officials at the border tomorrow.

- A) is shown                          B) will show  
C) is showing                          D) must be shown

37. Helen: What ..... your neighbour Carlos .....?

Philip: He's a very kind person.

- A) does/look like                      B) is/like  
C) does/like                          D) is/look like

38. The ..... short Ottoman bridge in the world is in Mostar in Bosnia.

- A) well                                  B) best  
C) good                                  D) better

39. Irene was talking to ..... about her brother, but I wasn't listening.

- A) my                                  B) I  
C) me                                  D) mine

40. It has become ..... noisy to work with the wedding outside.

- A) too                                  B) more  
C) as                                  D) enough

## TEST YOUR VOCABULARY 3

1. The statues on Easter Island were very ..... .  
I spent hours looking at them.
- A) enthusiastic                      B) crowded  
C) impressive                        D) comfortable
2. When Brazil won the World Cup, there were  
..... all over the country.
- A) relations                          B) celebrations  
C) connections                       D) operations
3. Didem: Did you ..... the contract?  
Tülay: Yes. So I'm now assistant manager  
of Simitistan.
- A) sign                                  B) think  
C) encounter                         D) save
4. This essay on the Vikings is ..... . There is  
absolutely nothing wrong with it.
- A) selfish                              B) fresh  
C) excellent                          D) interested
5. The dog has ..... . Has anyone seen it?
- A) deleted                              B) disappeared  
C) reduced                             D) removed
6. Under the laws of Draco, serious and minor  
crimes were all punished with the death  
..... .
- A) correction                         B) fine  
C) revenge                             D) penalty
7. Helga ..... Italian Renaissance art. Her  
favourite painters are Botticelli and  
Leonardo da Vinci.
- A) adores                               B) wonders  
C) supposes                          D) wishes
8. Andrew's application for Southampton  
University has been ....., so he is going to  
apply to Portsmouth University instead.
- A) studied                              B) delivered  
C) rejected                             D) surrendered
9. Venus is easy to see in the night sky  
because it is very ..... .
- A) brief                                 B) deep  
C) bright                                D) famous
10. The Hittites lived in Anatolia in the .....  
past.
- A) high                                 B) distant  
C) unfit                                 D) annual
11. I ..... my favourite quiz show on TV last  
night because I was working.
- A) refused                              B) failed  
C) reviewed                          D) missed
12. It is dangerous to skate on the lake today.  
The ice is ..... .
- A) melting                              B) watering  
C) cancelling                         D) tripping
13. ..... travel became easy in the twentieth  
century due to the airplane.
- A) Global                                B) Huge  
C) Wide                                 D) Urban
14. Last year, at Volkan and Figen's wedding, 12  
white doves were ..... into the air.
- A) flown                                 B) released  
C) caught                              D) married
15. I found German grammar very ....., so I  
stopped studying it.
- A) dangerous                         B) fragile  
C) confusing                         D) various
16. We don't have a TV in the house at the  
moment because it is being ..... .
- A) fixed                                 B) broken  
C) directed                             D) watched
17. I didn't ..... Nurten because she has  
bleached her hair blonde and started using  
blue contact lenses.
- A) explore                              B) recognize  
C) view                                 D) invent

18. It will ..... rain today, so take an umbrella with you.
- A) closely                      B) carefully  
C) successfully                D) probably
19. Taylan is living on his own in New York and hasn't got any real friends. He is feeling ..... and depressed.
- A) fair                              B) independent  
C) lonely                          D) whole
20. Around the world, over one billion people live in extreme ..... on under \$1.00 a day.
- A) poverty                        B) environment  
C) expression                    D) conflict
21. Large parts of Paris were ..... down in the 19th century so that new boulevards could be constructed.
- A) chosen                         B) pressed  
C) built                            D) torn
22. Massage Paul's wounded leg ....., or you will hurt him.
- A) busily                         B) repeatedly  
C) fiercely                        D) lightly
23. The bomb ..... in the city centre smashed windows in buildings one kilometre away.
- A) worry                         B) explosion  
C) eruption                        D) process
24. The water in the Danube rose and ..... parts of the Balkans.
- A) fell                              B) attacked  
C) flooded                        D) performed
25. I went out last night because my mother and brother were having a loud .....
- A) argument                      B) agreement  
C) statement                      D) revision
26. It's an amazing ....., isn't it? You and I are both called Naomi, we were both born in Valencia, and we are both accountants.
- A) relevance                      B) coincidence  
C) influence                        D) assistance
27. Volkan and Figen are no longer happy in their marriage together, so they are going to .....
- A) disappear                      B) engage  
C) widow                         D) divorce
28. .... those cans of baked beans from the window. Nobody is buying them.
- A) Deny                            B) Remove  
C) Disturb                        D) Promote
29. Don't wear those expensive clothes for the dinner. .... clothes will be fine.
- A) Elegant                        B) Broken  
C) Casual                         D) Costly
30. Several soldiers have been arrested because of their ..... attack on the defenseless village.
- A) annoying                      B) tame  
C) violent                         D) imaginary
31. When Roberto was carrying his salary home, he was ....., and so he lost all of it.
- A) robbed                         B) stolen  
C) followed                        D) annoyed
32. Edward was killed when he was ..... a snow leopard in the Himalayas.
- A) climbing                        B) hunting  
C) travelling                       D) developing
33. Despina's most beautiful ..... is definitely her eyes.
- A) sense                            B) vision  
C) body                             D) feature
34. The tallest statue of the Buddha in the world is ..... in Japan.
- A) related                         B) located  
C) prayed                         D) invented
35. In winter, temperatures are ..... in the southern states of the US.
- A) fairer                          B) lighter  
C) milder                         D) shinier



# UNIT 16

## Modals

### Ability

#### Present

To express an ability in the present, both *can* and *am/is/are able to* are used, but *can* is used more often.

Sally *can speak* French fluently.  
Sally *is able to speak* French fluently.

#### Past

To express an ability in the past both *could* and *was/were able to* are used, but *could* is used more often.

My grandmother *could play* the piano very well.  
My grandmother *was able to play* the piano very well.

#### Future

To express an ability in the future, *will be able to* is used. In some cases, *can* is used with a future meaning, too.

You can't speak English very well now, but by the end of the year,  
you *will be able to speak* it fluently.  
You *can't go* to school tomorrow because you are very ill.

*be able to* is also used with the present perfect tense.

I *haven't been able to sleep* well since last week.

1

Our typist made a mistake while she was typing the following sentences. Once you find the mistake, it is easy to correct them.

Can you find the rule and correct the sentences as in the example?



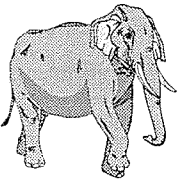
1. Eagles can carry their young in their pouches.

No, they can't. They can fly high in the sky.



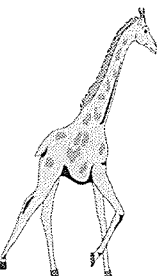
2. Kangaroos can pick up very heavy things with their trunks.

\_\_\_\_\_



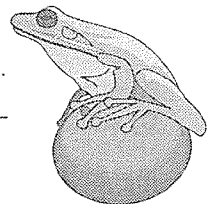
3. Elephants can jump very high with their long back legs.

\_\_\_\_\_



4. Frogs can eat leaves from trees with the help of their long necks.

\_\_\_\_\_



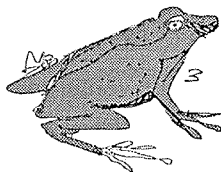
5. Giraffes can fly high in the sky.

\_\_\_\_\_

2

a) Complete the dialogue using "can" or "can't".

### Amphibians



The Wilsons are on a country road, driving to a farm. Suddenly a frog hops in front of the car and quickly disappears into the pond by the road. Sally, their six-year-old daughter, now wants to learn something about frogs.

Sally: That frog was on the road just a minute ago, and now it's in the water. (1) Can it swim?

Mr. Wilson: Yes, it (2) \_\_\_\_\_, Sally. Frogs are amphibians.

Sally: What does that mean?

Mr. Wilson: It means they (3) \_\_\_\_\_ live both on land and in water.

Sally: Are there any other amphibians?

Mrs. Wilson: Yes. Toads, which are quite similar to frogs but live less in the water, salamanders, caecilians, and a few others, but I (4) \_\_\_\_\_ remember their names now.

Sally: Are there differences between them?

Mrs. Wilson: Yes, a few. All amphibians have good ears—they (5) \_\_\_\_\_ hear well. Frogs and salamanders also have good vision—they (6) \_\_\_\_\_ see very well, but vision is nearly lost in caecilians. They (7) \_\_\_\_\_ see well because their eyes are covered by skin and sometimes bone. Salamanders and caecilians (8) \_\_\_\_\_ produce noises and coughs, but apparently these are not for communication. But frogs have complex sound production systems, and they (9) \_\_\_\_\_ communicate for warning and defence. Frogs (10) \_\_\_\_\_ lay large numbers of eggs, but salamanders and caecilians (11) \_\_\_\_\_ lay as many eggs as frogs. Most amphibians have legs, but caecilians are limbless—they have no legs. Frogs have long back legs, so they (12) \_\_\_\_\_ jump, hop, swim, and climb with the help of these long legs.

Sally: (13) \_\_\_\_\_ they live everywhere on earth?

Mrs. Wilson: Almost. They (14) \_\_\_\_\_ live in Antarctica and Greenland, but except for those places, they are found everywhere.

Sally: But they (15) \_\_\_\_\_ live in deserts, can they?

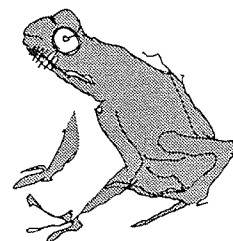
Mrs. Wilson: Of course they (16) \_\_\_\_\_. They live in a great variety of habitats, from deserts to rainforests.

Sally: Are they useful for human beings?

Mrs. Wilson: Yes. They are food for several human cultures and they are very important to science because they provide material for laboratory experiments in the study of anatomy, behaviour, ecology, and evolution.

Sally: How do you know so much about amphibians, Mum?

Mrs. Wilson: How? Sally, you forget that I'm a scientist! I have done lots of experiments on them.



b) Write T (True) or F (False) for the following statements according to the dialogue.

- 1. Frogs spend more time in the water than toads.
- 2. All amphibians are able to jump, hop, swim, and climb because they have long legs.
- 3. Amphibians can't live in hot climates.
- 4. The noises and coughs of salamanders and caecilians are not for communication.
- 5. Limbless amphibians can't swim.
- 6. Some people use amphibians as a source of food.
- 7. Amphibians are very useful in some laboratory experiments.
- 8. All amphibians can see very well, but some of them can hardly hear.

**3**

Jimmy, a five-year-old boy, is asking his mother about when he started doing different things as a baby. But his mother's notes are mixed up.

a) Can you help her put them in order?

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><u>  </u> d 1. three weeks old</p> <p><u>  </u> 2. four months old</p> <p><u>  </u> 3. seven months old</p> <p><u>  </u> 4. ten months old</p> <p><u>  </u> 5. one-and-a-half years old</p> <p><u>  </u> 6. two years old</p> | <p>a) produces a few individual words, but doesn't build sentences</p> <p>b) crawls on his knees, but doesn't stand up</p> <p>c) holds his feeding bottle, but can't put it in his mouth properly</p> <p>✓ d) distinguishes me from other people, but not his father</p> <p>e) builds short sentences, but not long ones</p> <p>f) stands up by holding chairs or tables, but can't walk</p> |
|--|--|

b) Make sentences about Jimmy using "could" or "couldn't".

1. You could distinguish me from other people when you were three weeks old, but you couldn't distinguish your father.
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_

**4**

Complete the dialogue using *can/can't, will/won't be able to*.

*Now Jimmy is asking his mother about the things he "will be able to do".*

Jimmy: Mum, my sister (1) \_\_\_\_\_ go out alone, but I (2) \_\_\_\_\_. When (3) \_\_\_\_\_ I \_\_\_\_\_ do that?

Mother: When you're old enough, Jimmy. You (4) \_\_\_\_\_ do lots of things when you're as old as your sister.

Jimmy: (5) \_\_\_\_\_ I \_\_\_\_\_ drive a car?

Mother: Of course not. Your sister (6) \_\_\_\_\_ drive at the moment, either, you know. She is only twelve. But you (7) \_\_\_\_\_ get your driving licence and drive a car when you're eighteen.

Jimmy: My sister (8) \_\_\_\_\_ ride a bicycle, (9) \_\_\_\_\_ she? (10) \_\_\_\_\_ I \_\_\_\_\_ do that, too, when I'm twelve?

Mother: Jimmy. You (11) \_\_\_\_\_ ride a bicycle long before you're twelve, probably in a year or so if Daddy helps you.

Jimmy: Great! What about swimming? My sister (12) \_\_\_\_\_ swim really fast, but I (13) \_\_\_\_\_.

Mother: But you've only just learnt. Actually, you (14) \_\_\_\_\_ swim very well for a five-year-old. If you keep practising, you (15) \_\_\_\_\_ soon \_\_\_\_\_ swim much faster than your sister.

Jimmy: Good! Then she (16) \_\_\_\_\_ laugh at me any more.

5

Last week, Molly fell off her bike and broke her leg. Her leg is in plaster now.

Look at the list below and decide which of the actions she *hasn't been able to do* since the accident.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> go running along the seashore | <input type="radio"/> ride her bike           |
| <input type="radio"/> play with her computer                   | <input type="radio"/> write short stories     |
| <input type="radio"/> go swimming in the pool                  | <input type="radio"/> play the guitar         |
| <input type="radio"/> take her dog for a walk                  | <input type="radio"/> attend aerobics lessons |

Since the accident, .....

Molly hasn't been able to go running along the seashore.

---



---



---



---



---



---

**Study the box.**

**Could or was/were able to**

Both **could** and **was/were able to** are used to express an ability in the past.

I **could run** faster when I was younger.  
I **was able to run** faster when I was younger.

Only **was/were able to** is used when we mean that "something was difficult, but I tried hard and did it."

I don't know anything about cars, but when my car broke down in the country last weekend, I **was able to repair** it.

In the negative form, both **couldn't** and **wasn't/weren't able to** can be used, but **couldn't** is used more often.

I **couldn't/wasn't able to run** fast when I was a child. *(ability in the past)*

I don't know anything about cars, so when my car broke down in the country last weekend, I **couldn't/wasn't able to repair** it. *(one specific event in the past)*

**6**

Complete the following sentences with “*could* or *was/were able to*”. Use only “*could*” when it means an ability in the past.

1. After a lot of effort, he \_\_\_\_\_ open the rusty lock.
2. Suddenly a dog appeared in front of the car, but luckily, I \_\_\_\_\_ stop the car immediately and avoid an accident.
3. My great-grandfather was French, and my great-grandmother was English, and they lived in Japan, so by the time my grandfather was seven, he \_\_\_\_\_ speak three languages fluently.
4. The people from the plane crash \_\_\_\_\_ survive because they found a good supply of water.
5. When I was a teenager, I \_\_\_\_\_ play the piano really well, but I'm out of practice now.
6. Ten years ago, we \_\_\_\_\_ see almost nothing but trees when we looked out of our windows.
7. We \_\_\_\_\_ buy tickets for the concert because we got to the box office early.
8. Our first dog \_\_\_\_\_ do lots of clever tricks, but the one we have now is too disobedient to learn anything.

**7**

Complete the sentences using *can*, *could* or a form of *be able to*. In some sentences, you'll need the negative forms. There may be more than one answer in some of them.

1. I'm sorry. I \_\_\_\_\_ come to the meeting next week because I have to go to a seminar.
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ read music since he was only four years old.
3. She's colour-blind, so she \_\_\_\_\_ distinguish between pale red and pale green.
4. Unfortunately, I \_\_\_\_\_ give her the news, because she left before I arrived.
5. A: \_\_\_\_\_ you type?  
B: I don't know. I've never tried!
6. He \_\_\_\_\_ see properly since he injured his left eye in that accident.
7. A: Do you think we \_\_\_\_\_ leave work early tomorrow?  
B: Probably. Why don't you check with the manager?
8. I \_\_\_\_\_ swim a length of the pool underwater when I was a child, but now I \_\_\_\_\_ even do a width.
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ only stay for a few minutes, so don't worry about making tea.
10. My brother \_\_\_\_\_ walk until he was three years old, but now he's a professional athlete.
11. Luckily, she \_\_\_\_\_ get to the post office before it closed.
12. A: How long \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ cook like this?  
B: Since my teens. My mother taught me.

## Obligation

### *must* or *have to*

**must** is used if the speaker feels the obligation himself. **Have to** is used if the obligation comes from an external source, such as rules, laws, parents, teachers, etc.

I **must leave** now—I don't want to get caught in the rush hour traffic.  
I **have to leave** now because Dad will get angry if I'm late.

Past form of **must** and **have to** is **had to**.

I **had to leave** the café early because I didn't want to get caught in the rush hour traffic.

**must** and **have to** can be used with a future meaning, but to stress an obligation in the future, **will have to** is used.

When you leave home, you'll **have to cook** your own food.

**have to** can be used in the present perfect.

Dad **has had to work** very hard since last week.

8

Mike is a responsible student and Jake is a lazy one. They are both preparing for the Oxbridge Entrance Examination.

Complete the sentences with the correct endings. Then decide which sentences belong to Mike and which of them belong to Jake.

- a) so I can spend more time on my studies
- ✓ b) because my aim is to study architecture at university
- c) or my father won't buy me the computer I want
- d) because my father wants me to study engineering
- e) because I don't want to miss any of them
- f) because my mother has set limitations on our dates

- |      |    |   |   |
|------|----|---|---|
| Mike | 1. | I must concentrate on maths and science this year | b |
|      | 2. | I have to stop seeing my girlfriend so often,     |   |
|      | 3. | I must try not to see my girlfriend very often    |   |
|      | 4. | I must attend my classes regularly                |   |
|      | 5. | I have to stop being absent from classes,         |   |
|      | 6. | I have to learn to like maths and science         |   |

9


Mike has got a place at Cambridge University, and he's leaving his hometown next week. There, he's going to live in a flat with a friend of his.

Decide which of the following Mike "will have to do" and which of them he "will be able to do".

- wash his own clothes
- hold late-night parties
- do the housework
- do the ironing himself
- lead an active social life
- make friends from different countries
- cook his own food
- eat whatever he likes
- go to the cinema or theatre more often
- learn how to make a budget

1. He will have to wash his own clothes.
2. He will be able to hold late-night parties.
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_

**Study the box.**

 To express *lack of obligation*, use **needn't** or **don't have to**. They both mean "not necessary."  
 There's no school tomorrow, so I **don't have to go** to bed early tonight.  
 so I **needn't go** to bed early tonight.

To express prohibition, use **mustn't**.  
 You **mustn't exceed** the speed limit, or you'll get a fine.

To express lack of obligation in the past, use **didn't have to**.  
 Yesterday, there was no school, so I **didn't have to get** up early.

10

Complete the sentences with "mustn't" or "needn't".

1. You \_\_\_\_\_ be late tomorrow. The meeting is very important.
2. Now, children. You \_\_\_\_\_ touch these saucepans, because they're very hot.
3. You \_\_\_\_\_ hurry. That report is not urgent.
4. A: Mum, can I go and play in the swimming pool?  
 B: Yes, but only in the children's pool. You \_\_\_\_\_ go in the adult's pool if I'm not with you.
5. You \_\_\_\_\_ cook anything for me tonight because I'll probably be late. I can get a sandwich or something later.
6. Tell her that she \_\_\_\_\_ bring those books back tomorrow. I can pick them up when I go to her place on Saturday.
7. We \_\_\_\_\_ forget to pay the phone bill tomorrow, or they'll disconnect our telephone.
8. You \_\_\_\_\_ bring any food for the picnic. I've prepared plenty.

11

Complete the passage with the words in the box.

- |                |                        |                         |
|----------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>must</i>    | <i>has had to</i>      | <i>will be able to</i>  |
| <i>mustn't</i> | <i>won't have to</i>   | <i>won't be able to</i> |
| <i>have to</i> | <i>didn't have to</i>  | <i>was able to</i>      |
| <i>had to</i>  | <i>doesn't have to</i> | <i>couldn't</i>         |

Last Monday, Lucy started a new job as a computer operator in a multinational company. It has some advantages, but also some disadvantages over her previous job.

She'll get a much better salary in her new job. This means she (1) \_\_\_\_\_ buy more elegant clothes and spend more on entertainment from now on. She didn't earn well in her previous job, so most of the time she (2) \_\_\_\_\_ stay at home while her friends were going to dance clubs or other places, because she (3) \_\_\_\_\_ afford to go out very often.

But her previous work had an advantage—it started at 10 o'clock, so Lucy (4) \_\_\_\_\_ get up very early. Her new job, however, starts at 8.30, so, since last Monday, she (5) \_\_\_\_\_ leave home at 7.30 to get to work on time. On Wednesday, she didn't hear the alarm clock and overslept. She left home in a hurry and took a taxi. "Quick. I (6) \_\_\_\_\_ be in Trafalgar Square by 8.30," she said to the taxi driver. It wasn't easy for him to get there quickly in the heavy traffic, but he took the side roads and managed to get there at 8.25, so Lucy (7) \_\_\_\_\_ enter the office at precisely 8.30.

At the moment, Lucy is at home relaxing in an armchair and watching TV. "I (8) \_\_\_\_\_ go to bed early on work days," she thought, "and I (9) \_\_\_\_\_ be late for work because I don't want to lose my job." But she (10) \_\_\_\_\_ go to bed early tonight because it's her day off tomorrow, and she (11) \_\_\_\_\_ get up early.

Lucy is quite happy with her new job. She knows that, from now on, she (12) \_\_\_\_\_ sleep until late on work days, but she doesn't mind this. She believes that worrying about money is much worse than having to get up early.

**YOUR OPINION**

Do you agree with the last sentence of the passage? Write a few sentences expressing your own opinion.

---



---



---




---

**WRITING:** Write a short passage about your school life this year. Try to use the modals you've learnt in this unit. You can start like this:

*I started this school in ..... Since then, I have had to/haven't been able to .....*



**Advisability**



**should**

Use **should** when you advise someone **to do** something, and **shouldn't** when you advise someone **not to do** something.

You **should go** to bed early on school days.  
 You **shouldn't go** to school without having breakfast.

**12** Mr. Simpson had a heart attack two weeks ago. Now he is well again. His doctor is giving him some advice before he leaves the hospital.

Decide which of the following things the doctor says Mr. Simpson *should* or *shouldn't* do.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input checked="" type="radio"/> give up smoking</li> <li><input type="radio"/> stay in smoky places</li> <li><input type="radio"/> take regular walks</li> <li><input type="radio"/> avoid leading a hectic life</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="radio"/> keep thinking about your problems</li> <li><input type="radio"/> eat fatty foods</li> <li><input type="radio"/> lose weight, but slowly</li> <li><input type="radio"/> always keep your medicine close at hand</li> </ul> |
|---|--|

- |                                       |          |
|---------------------------------------|----------|
| 1. <u>You should give up smoking.</u> | 5. _____ |
| 2. _____                              | 6. _____ |
| 3. _____                              | 7. _____ |
| 4. _____                              | 8. _____ |

**13** Write two pieces of advice for each of the situations given, one with *should* and one with *shouldn't*.

1. My flatmate never picks up after herself and this really irritates me, but I can't talk to her about this.  
 You should tell her to pick up after herself. / You shouldn't keep the problem to yourself.
2. Sally inherited a large sum of money from her grandmother, but she doesn't know what to do with it.  
 She \_\_\_\_\_  
 She \_\_\_\_\_
3. People destroy the earth thoughtlessly. They don't think about future generations.  
 People \_\_\_\_\_  
 People \_\_\_\_\_
4. My brother always delays doing his homework until the last moment, then he does it in a hurry and, of course, badly.  
 He \_\_\_\_\_  
 He \_\_\_\_\_
5. Our teacher never gives us enough time to revise before quizzes. He just says, "You are going to have a quiz tomorrow."  
 He \_\_\_\_\_  
 He \_\_\_\_\_

**Possibility**

**Positive**      *Teacher: Terry is absent from class today. Why?*

|                    |   |   |
|--------------------|---|---|
| <b>Possibility</b> | <i>Liz: He <b>may/might</b> be ill.</i> | There may be some other reason, but I don't know. <b>Perhaps</b> he is ill.                                     |
|                    | <i>John: He <b>must</b> be ill.</i>     | I was with him after school yesterday. He wasn't feeling very well, so, <b>most probably</b> , he is ill today. |
| <b>Fact</b>        | <i>Sue: He <b>is</b> ill.</i>           | This is a <b>fact</b> . I know for certain. I talked to him on the phone last night, and he said he was ill.    |

**Negative**      *Sally: Have you got Fred's phone number with you? I need to call him.*

|                    |   |  |
|--------------------|---|--|
| <b>Possibility</b> | <i>Mark: Well, he <b>may not be/might not be</b> at home now.</i> | <b>Perhaps</b> he isn't at home now because it is rather early for him to get home.                        |
|                    | <i>Jill: He <b>can't</b> be at home now.</i>                      | I'm <b>almost sure</b> he isn't at home now, because he normally gets home around 7.00, and it's 6.30 now. |
| <b>Fact</b>        | <i>Mary: He <b>isn't</b> at home now.</i>                         | I know that he isn't at home. I phoned him at his office just ten minutes ago, and he was still there.     |

**14**

Complete the sentences with the modals in the box. You can use them more than once.

*must*
*may (might)*
*may not (might not)*
*can't*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. A: What have you cooked, Mum? I haven't eaten anything since this morning.<br/>B: Oh, you _____ be very hungry then.</p> <p>2. A: That man over there looks like the chairman.<br/>B: No, it _____ be him. I'm sure he left for a conference in Helsinki just this morning.</p> <p>3. A: What time is it?<br/>B: Well, I haven't got my watch with me, but it _____ be around 5.00 because it's beginning to get dark.</p> <p>4. A: Why does Lucy always get low grades?<br/>B: I don't know. She _____ study hard enough.</p> <p>5. A: Whenever I see her, she has a big bar of chocolate in her hand.<br/>B: Well, she _____ like chocolate, then.</p> | <p>6. A: Look at those dark clouds.<br/>B: Yes, it _____ start raining soon.</p> <p>7. A: Why don't we invite Jill to the theatre with us tonight?<br/>B: Well, she _____ want to come, because she doesn't enjoy comedies much. She'd probably prefer a more serious play.</p> <p>8. A: Dad, can we take a break now and continue the work later? I'm very tired!<br/>B: We've only just started. You _____ be tired yet.</p> <p>9. A: Brr... It's freezing outside.<br/>B: Yes, and look how grey the sky is. It _____ snow soon.</p> <p>10. A: Isn't it strange that Larry didn't want to come dancing with us?<br/>B: Well, he _____ be short of money these days. Normally, he really likes dancing, you know.</p> |
|--|---|

**Study the box.**

**Making suggestions**

You can make suggestions in many ways.

**Let's go** to an Indian restaurant tonight for a change.

**Why don't we go** to an Indian restaurant tonight for a change?

**How about going** to an Indian restaurant tonight for a change?

**We could go** to an Indian restaurant tonight for a change.

**Shall we go** to an Indian restaurant tonight for a change?

**Expressing preferences**

To express preferences, **would rather** or **would prefer** is used. Pay attention to the verb form after each of them.

- Let's go out tonight.
- Well, I'd rather **stay** at home.
- I'd prefer **to stay** at home.

**15**

Make suggestions using the patterns mentioned in the box. Use **would rather** in the reply.

e.g. Jack loves horror movies, but Jill prefers documentaries.

Jack: How about watching the horror movie on Channel 6?

Jill: Well, I'd rather watch the documentary on TRT 1.

1. Helen likes to spend Sundays relaxing at home, but Mike likes to do outdoor activities.  
Mike: Let's \_\_\_\_\_  
Helen: \_\_\_\_\_
2. Mary and Mark are on holiday. Mary loves swimming and sunbathing, but Mark likes to sit in the shade after swimming.  
Mark: Why don't \_\_\_\_\_  
Mary: \_\_\_\_\_
3. Jenny is very fond of new, stylish clothes, and she very often buys something new, but her sister, Amy, spends almost all her pocket money on books.  
Jenny: Shall \_\_\_\_\_  
Amy: \_\_\_\_\_
4. Daisy and Dave have just won £2,000 in a competition, but they have different opinions about what to do with the money. Daisy likes to spend money without thinking about the future, but Dave likes to save up.  
Daisy: How about \_\_\_\_\_  
Dave: \_\_\_\_\_

**16**

Your parents have just left home and will be away over the weekend, so you and your sister will be alone for two days. You want to take advantage of this freedom.

**Write a conversation between you and your sister. Make suggestions and express your preferences.**

You: Great! Now, we two are completely free. Let's make a plan first.

Your sister: Shall \_\_\_\_\_

You: Well, I don't think that's a good idea. I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_

Your sister: Why don't \_\_\_\_\_

You: No. \_\_\_\_\_

Your sister: How about \_\_\_\_\_

You: That's a good idea! I like it. So, let's start getting ready for the party.

**Study the box.**

**Passive with Modals**

**active:** modal + base form (V<sub>1</sub>)

**passive:** modal + be + past participle (V<sub>3</sub>)

Someone **should type** this report immediately.  
This report **should be typed** immediately.

They **had to take** her to hospital.  
She **had to be taken** to hospital.

**17** Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verbs in parentheses: *active* or *passive*.

1. Antibiotics should \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) regularly, or they aren't effective in fighting bacteria and viruses.
2. Farm equipment had to \_\_\_\_\_ (*pull*) by animals before the invention of the tractor.
3. A: Teacher, can you \_\_\_\_\_ (*postpone*) tomorrow's exam to the next day?  
B: No, it can't \_\_\_\_\_ (*postpone*) this time.
4. This plant shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ (*keep*) in direct sunlight, or it will lose its leaves.
5. Parents should \_\_\_\_\_ (*warn*) their children of danger all the time.
6. Children should \_\_\_\_\_ (*warn*) of danger all the time.
7. Why don't you ask the boss for permission? He may \_\_\_\_\_ (*allow*) you to leave early.
8. A cure for cancer may \_\_\_\_\_ (*find*) soon, because scientists are working hard on it.
9. Aspirin can \_\_\_\_\_ (*use*) as a painkiller or fever reducer.
10. Some birds, such as ostriches, cannot \_\_\_\_\_ (*fly*).
11. All the staff worked hard, but they couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ (*finish*) the work yesterday.
12. The work couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ (*finish*) yesterday, but it has to \_\_\_\_\_ (*finish*) today, or the boss will be very angry.
13. Turkey is on a major earthquake belt, so contractors shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ (*allow*) to build very tall buildings.
14. You can't \_\_\_\_\_ (*lose*) weight healthily simply by dieting. You must \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) regular exercise, too.
15. Regular exercise must \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) to lose weight healthily.

**18** *Cengiz is a university student. He has studied the English language for several years, but he has always had trouble with modal verbs.*

**Look at these examples from some of his recent conversations and help him out by correcting any incorrect modal verbs.**

1. You might not pay to get into the museum today, since Tuesdays are free.  
*Changes:* \_\_\_\_\_
2. Last night, I must clear my blocked kitchen sink. Luckily, I could do it quickly, before the smell made me sick.  
*Changes:* \_\_\_\_\_
3. I may leave now, because my class starts in twenty minutes and I simply don't have to be late again, or my teacher will fail me.  
*Changes:* \_\_\_\_\_
4. I don't have to have any dairy products like milk, cheese, or yoghurt, because they make me violently ill.  
*Changes:* \_\_\_\_\_

5. I'm not sure yet, but I shouldn't come to Sedef's birthday party, because I can try to finish a project for school.  
Changes: \_\_\_\_\_
6. I really could eat more fruits and vegetables, I think, since I needn't get enough vitamins without them.  
Changes: \_\_\_\_\_
7. Thank God I don't have to do any tasks or chores this weekend, because I really should get some rest and relaxation.  
Changes: \_\_\_\_\_
8. You certainly mustn't give any money to that beggar, but it was very nice of you to do so.  
Changes: \_\_\_\_\_
9. I'm sure that I could go to the exhibition with Hande, but—to be honest—I don't really want to.  
Changes: \_\_\_\_\_
10. We needn't take any of these apples across the border because it's against the law to import fruit.  
Changes: \_\_\_\_\_
11. That woman sitting over there looks exactly like Özden, but it mustn't be her because she's in Çorlu at the moment.  
Changes: \_\_\_\_\_
12. I can arrive on time, but, depending on the traffic, I also cannot.  
Changes: \_\_\_\_\_

**19**

Complete the following sentences with an appropriate modal verb (*can, must, should, etc.*) and a verb given below, in *active* or *passive* form.

*cancel, complete, cook, defeat, delay, do, elect, find, forbid, invite, like, need, repair, reward, win*

1. Your help \_\_\_\_\_ on the choice of costumes for the parade this weekend, if there are not enough people.
2. My essay \_\_\_\_\_ by this Friday, or the professor is going to fail me.
3. Ron \_\_\_\_\_ lemon meringue pie at all, because he hasn't even touched the piece on his plate.
4. We \_\_\_\_\_ the housework until Saturday, because our guests aren't coming until Sunday morning.
5. You really \_\_\_\_\_ any pasta—I have already made some rice for the side dish.
6. More than 1,000 people \_\_\_\_\_ to the conference, because there are only 1,000 seats available in the conference hall.
7. Melissa says that she would like to be President of the United States someday, but unfortunately for her, she \_\_\_\_\_ because she was born in the United Kingdom.
8. Apparently, the company barbecue \_\_\_\_\_ because of the threat of heavy rain, but it's still not certain.
9. Cantonese Chinese has an entirely different structure from Turkish, so you \_\_\_\_\_ it very difficult to learn.
10. Pittsburgh \_\_\_\_\_ Cincinnati in order to advance to the next round of the playoffs.
11. In my opinion, the death penalty \_\_\_\_\_ because it does not prevent other crimes.
12. I think that your car \_\_\_\_\_ by a very good mechanic, because it's got some very serious problems.
13. They say that our flight \_\_\_\_\_ because of the bad weather conditions.
14. Chicago is playing extremely well this year; in fact, I think that no other team in the league \_\_\_\_\_ against them right now.
15. We are sorry to inform you that you \_\_\_\_\_ with the prize money due to the company's bankruptcy.

- 20** Look at the following situations and discuss what you think the people *should* (or *shouldn't*) do. Give reasons for your advice.
- 1** Kaan is going home on the minibus. He has had a long and difficult day, and he is feeling tired and a little ill. An old man with a cane gets onto the minibus, but nobody gets up to give him a seat. Kaan thinks that, perhaps, he should give the man his seat, but he feels very tired and sick and doesn't want to stand up for the long ride home. What should Kaan do?
  - 2** Şeyda is going out to study a little at a café tonight, but she can't decide between Yafra and Zaaf. Yafra is a very fancy place, with good service and good coffee, but she doesn't like some of the snobbish customers there. On the other hand, it is a quiet place. Zaaf does not have great service and the coffee is just okay, but she feels much more comfortable there. On the other hand, it can get very loud sometimes. Where should Şeyda go?
  - 3** Cem's nineteenth birthday is tomorrow night. Some friends have invited him out for a small party at a nearby restaurant. Cem thinks that the party may be fun, but it may also be very uncomfortable because he doesn't feel at all social these days and prefers to celebrate his birthday alone. On the other hand, he hasn't seen his friends for a while, and he is a little afraid of losing them. What should Cem do?
  - 4** İşil is 1.66m tall and weighs 65kg. She is thinking of dieting because she is not happy with her weight and thinks that she is fat. Her parents tell her that she isn't fat and that she is perfect, but she doesn't think that she can trust their opinion because they are her parents. Some of İşil's friends say that she should diet, and some say that she shouldn't diet. Also, İşil's life is very busy these days, and she is afraid that she won't be able to hold to the diet. On the other hand, a diet may help her to save money. What should İşil do?
  - 5** Davut is planning to get a pet, but he can't decide on a dog or a cat. He likes both dogs and cats, but they both have disadvantages for him, too. Dogs are difficult to housetrain, and Davut thinks that he may not be patient enough to housetrain one. On the other hand, dogs are very loyal and they show their love for you very often. Cats are easy to housetrain, but they are not as friendly as dogs, and Davut wants to have a friendly pet above all. On the other hand, cats are often more relaxing animals than dogs, because they are not noisy and they do not often attack or bite. Which animal should Davut get?
  - 6** Nilay is thinking of buying a used car. She thinks that it may give her more freedom to get around, and make life easier. She is getting tired of crowded public transportation, too. She can afford to buy a used car, but she thinks that she may not be able to afford the cost of always getting petrol and keeping the car in good condition. Also, it may cause her more stress because of traffic and other problems. What should Nilay do?
  - 7** Two different companies, Zarif Ltd. and Babayani Inc., have offered Murat jobs. The job at Zarif is very difficult, but it pays a little better. On the other hand, it is also very far away from his home, and so he would spend a lot of time going there and coming back. Also, the other workers at Zarif do not seem to be especially friendly people. The job at Babayani is not especially difficult, but the pay is a little low. On the other hand, it is within walking distance from his house, and the other workers there seem very nice. Both jobs have the same working hours. Should Murat take the job at Zarif, or the one at Babayani?
  - 8** İrmak has smoked for many years. Now, she is thinking of quitting, but she doesn't know the best way to quit. She could quit suddenly. That method would be quicker, but it would also be more difficult. She could also quit slowly, and smoke one less cigarette every day. That method would be easier, but it would also make it easier for her to continue smoking and not to quit at all. She is determined to quit smoking, but she can't decide how. What should İrmak do?
  - 9** Ozan is thinking of going to university, but he is not sure. Everyone tells him that university is necessary, but he doesn't completely believe it. He has already received an offer for a full-time job in a public relations company, and the job pays good money. But he also thinks that he may not get promoted without a university degree. On the other hand, he knows that he is not a good student, and he doesn't really want to study hard. He thinks that he may fail university, and then he would feel very bad. What should Ozan do?
  - 10** Ezgi has just learnt that her younger brother, Tolga, has stolen a lot of things from a shop. She is angry with him about this, and she thinks that she should tell the shopowner about it. Perhaps the shopowner will forgive Tolga if he returns the things. On the other hand, if the shopowner is not an understanding person, he may call the police and Tolga may be arrested. Ezgi knows that she should do something, but she doesn't know what to do. What should Ezgi do?

# UNIT 17

## Auxiliaries

### 1 Complete the sentences with an *auxiliary + pronoun*.

Aslı is a prep student at an Anatolian High School. Today, they studied auxiliaries at school, and now she's checking her information with her mother, who is an English teacher.

- Aslı: Mum, auxiliaries are helping verbs like *is, did, does, and should*, (1) aren't they?
- Mother: Yes, they are.
- Aslı: We can use them for many purposes, (2) \_\_\_\_\_?
- Mother: That's right. They are used in question tags and in short answers.
- Aslı: Oh, yes. When a sentence is positive, the tag must be negative, (3) \_\_\_\_\_?
- Mother: Definitely.
- Aslı: And when the sentence is negative, we must use a positive tag, (4) \_\_\_\_\_?
- Mother: Yes, that's correct.
- Aslı: And Mum, we can't use a noun in the tag, (5) \_\_\_\_\_? For example, if the sentence begins with "*Peter...*", we should use "*he*" in the tag, (6) \_\_\_\_\_?
- Mother: Yes. Pronouns like *he, they, she*, etc. are used in the tag.
- Aslı: We've learnt lots of things at school today. We've also learnt how to use **too, either, so, nor** and **neither** in short answers. **Too** and **so** are used for positive sentences, (7) \_\_\_\_\_?
- Mother: Yes, but the word order is different.
- Aslı: Yes, I know. We have to use **subject + auxiliary + too**, but **so + auxiliary + subject**, (8) \_\_\_\_\_? For example, if someone says "*I'm a teacher*," I can say "*My mother is, too*" or "*So is my mother*," (9) \_\_\_\_\_?
- Mother: Perfectly true. And also pay attention to the fact that the auxiliaries in both sentences should be parallel.
- Aslı: Yes, I know. If you say "*I like romantic films*", I should say, "*Dad does, too*" or "*so does Dad*", (10) \_\_\_\_\_? And Mum, we have to use **either, neither** and **nor** for negative sentences, (11) \_\_\_\_\_?
- Mother: Yes, but again, the word order is different.
- Aslı: Yes. **Subject + negative auxiliary + either**, but **nor/neither + positive auxiliary + subject**. **Nor** and **neither** can be used in place of each other, (12) \_\_\_\_\_?
- Mother: That's right. If I say "*I don't like horror films*", what will you say?
- Aslı: I'll say, "*I don't, either*", "*Nor do I*", or "*Neither do I*", (13) \_\_\_\_\_?
- Mother: Wonderful! Now, how about if you want to state a different opinion? For example, you like pop music, but I don't like it, so how will you reply when I say, "*I don't like pop music*"?
- Aslı: Oh, very easy. I'll only say "*I do*" because we can't use *too, either, so, neither* and *nor* when we state a different opinion, (14) \_\_\_\_\_?
- Mother: Correct. But that's enough. We should stop now, shall we? And we have to prepare dinner before Dad gets home, has he? And you won't say you have to do your homework now, will you?
- Aslı: Mum, you've made two mistakes!
- Mother: Great! I did it deliberately, and you caught them. Your English is very good, indeed.
- Aslı: Of course. I'm the daughter of an English teacher!

- Aslı is careful enough to catch her mother's mistakes. Are you as careful as her?

1. mistake: \_\_\_\_\_ correct form: \_\_\_\_\_

2. mistake: \_\_\_\_\_ correct form: \_\_\_\_\_

**2** Complete the sentences with the correct question tag.

1. A: Kevin mustn't eat dairy products, \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
B: That's right. He's allergic to them.
2. You can't come with us on Sunday, \_\_\_\_\_ ?
3. Mark gave you those earrings, \_\_\_\_\_ ?
4. Samantha's parents are both teachers, \_\_\_\_\_ ?
5. The train from Ankara hasn't arrived yet, \_\_\_\_\_ ?
6. Her parents never allow her to go out alone, \_\_\_\_\_ ?
7. This vase was made in China, \_\_\_\_\_ ?
8. Your brother won't be very happy when he hears the news, \_\_\_\_\_ ?
9. The local theatre isn't used very often, \_\_\_\_\_ ?
10. The furniture has just been delivered, \_\_\_\_\_ ?
11. You've met my sister, Janet, \_\_\_\_\_ ?
12. Sarah never admits her mistakes, \_\_\_\_\_ ?

**3** Complete the sentences with "too" or "either", using the correct auxiliary.

e.g. Sally arrived at the meeting late and Sam did, too.  
Sally has never been abroad and her parents haven't, either.

1. Roses won't grow well in this type of soil and several other plants \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Mandy has accepted our invitation and Sarah \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Our apartment isn't centrally heated and theirs \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Peter isn't going to be able to meet us tomorrow and Tony \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Tony might join us for the meal and Lucy \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The children weren't feeling very well yesterday and I \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The manager's moved to another branch and his secretary \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Jackie wants to have piano lessons and Suzy \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Melissa got a really good grade in the exam and Veronica \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Andrea can't take time off during the week and Paul \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Lucy isn't allowed to eat anything sweet and Julie \_\_\_\_\_, because they both have problems with their teeth.
12. The living room's really cold at the moment and the bedrooms \_\_\_\_\_.

**4** Complete the sentences with "so" or "neither", using the correct auxiliary.

e.g. Sally arrived at the meeting late and so did Sam.  
Sally has never been abroad and neither have her parents.

1. Our team played really badly and \_\_\_\_\_ the opposition.
2. Maria's got a pet snake and \_\_\_\_\_ Peter.
3. Mary's getting some extra money for the work she did at the weekend and \_\_\_\_\_ Laura.
4. I've never tried skiing before and \_\_\_\_\_ he.
5. I can't understand our chemistry teacher and \_\_\_\_\_ most of the other students in the class.
6. Valerie has to go and see the chairman this morning and \_\_\_\_\_ Charlie and Fran.
7. Our cat won't eat canned pet food and \_\_\_\_\_ our dog.
8. The windows downstairs haven't been cleaned yet and \_\_\_\_\_ the ones upstairs.
9. Patrick couldn't swim until he was a teenager and \_\_\_\_\_ Maurice.
10. Marie washes her hair three times a week and \_\_\_\_\_ Clarissa.
11. The Petersons didn't enjoy the play and \_\_\_\_\_ I.
12. My aunt gave me a bracelet for my birthday and \_\_\_\_\_ my friend.



**5** Match the first speaker's statements with the second speaker's replies.

- |   |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| — 1. Our television set has broken down.                | a) You should, too.            |
| — 2. Tom has had to work very hard recently.            | b) So could my brother.        |
| — 3. I haven't seen that film yet.                      | c) Neither could Jenny.        |
| — 4. My son could walk before he was eleven months old. | d) So has our tape recorder.   |
| — 5. I have to go shopping tomorrow.                    | e) My husband has, too.        |
| — 6. I couldn't attend the meeting yesterday.           | f) Nor has ours.               |
| — 7. Our car hasn't got air conditioning.               | g) Jim didn't, either.         |
| — 8. I refused the manager's offer.                     | h) So do I.                    |
| — 9. Helen shouldn't go out in this cold weather.       | i) So did the other employees. |
| — 10. We don't have to work tomorrow.                   | j) You shouldn't, either.      |
| — 11. Dave should stop smoking immediately.             | k) Neither do I.               |
| — 12. I didn't agree with the manager.                  | l) Nor have I.                 |

**6** Using the correct auxiliary, complete the blanks with "too", "either", "so" and "neither", or state the contrast.

*When I met Sandra the other day, she was really angry. I asked the reason and she told me this story.*

“ I usually get on quite well with my colleagues, you know, especially with Jessica because we have quite a lot in common. She reads a lot and (1) \_\_\_\_\_ I. I'm very interested in history and she (2) \_\_\_\_\_. I actively work for the environment and (3) \_\_\_\_\_ she. Last year, I went to the Amazonian rainforest to do voluntary work, you know, and (4) \_\_\_\_\_ she. We worked there happily together. She didn't once complain about the hard conditions there and (5) \_\_\_\_\_ I.

We have our differences, of course, but we don't mind them much. She likes going out dancing, for example, but I (6) \_\_\_\_\_. I can't stand loud parties, but she (7) \_\_\_\_\_.

Anyway, you know my boyfriend, Chris. We weren't getting on very well. He wanted us to spend every spare moment together, but I (8) \_\_\_\_\_, because I needed time for my work on the environmental project. Anyway, we decided to split up last week. And yesterday, at the café just opposite our workplace, who should I see with him? Jessica—sitting holding his hands, gazing into his eyes, and chatting happily to him! I'll never speak to her again, and I'm sure she (9) \_\_\_\_\_ speak to me, \_\_\_\_\_, because I swore at her.”

Study the box.

**Giving short answers**

**think**

positive: I think so.                      negative: I don't think so.

A: Is Jane coming to the end-of-term party?

B: **I think so./I don't think so.**

*I think so. = I think that she is coming.*

*I don't think so. = I don't think that she is coming.*

**be afraid**

positive: I'm afraid so.                      negative: I'm afraid not.

A: Have you lost your bag?

B: **I'm afraid so.**

*I'm afraid so. = I'm afraid I've lost it.*

A: Have you found tickets for the play?

B: **I'm afraid not.**

*I'm afraid not. = I'm afraid I haven't found tickets for the play.*

**hope**

positive: I hope so.                      negative: I hope not.

A: Will she be able to come tomorrow?

B: **I hope so./I hope not.**

*I hope so. = I hope that she'll be able to come.*

*I hope not. = I hope that she won't be able to come.*

7

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in parentheses.

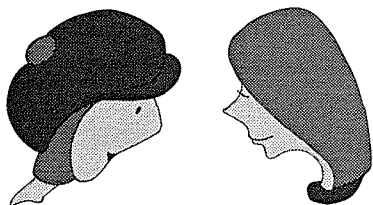
1. A: Leslie isn't going to come with us tomorrow, is he?  
B: I \_\_\_\_\_ (*hope*). He really irritates me because he always complains about everything.
2. A: Did Marion pass her exam?  
B: I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be afraid*). She'll have to try again next year.
3. A: Is Jack away at the moment?  
B: I \_\_\_\_\_ (*think*). I certainly haven't seen him for over a week.
4. A: Has the flight been cancelled?  
B: I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be afraid*). The aircraft has an engine problem, but we are trying to transfer you all onto another flight.
5. A: Do you think you'll be offered the position?  
B: I \_\_\_\_\_ (*hope*). The interview went really well and I liked the place very much.
6. A: Will you see Michael at the weekend?  
B: I \_\_\_\_\_ (*think*). I'm going to visit my cousins in another town.
7. A: Have you got these boots in a larger size?  
B: I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be afraid*). We sold the last pair about an hour ago.
8. A: Is Sarah angry with you?  
B: I \_\_\_\_\_ (*think*). She smiled when I saw her about an hour ago.

**8** Complete the following dialogues by using tag questions and "I think/don't think so", "I hope so/not", and "I'm afraid so/not".

1. *Sevgi:* Did the technicians manage to fix your computer?  
*Ozan:* Yes, \_\_\_\_\_, but I'm going to go to the shop tonight to make sure.
2. *Tuğba:* You haven't managed to contact Burcu yet, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Kaan:* No, \_\_\_\_\_. Her cellphone's been off for three or four days.
3. *Troy:* So, is your older brother coming home for Christmas this year?  
*Helen:* Oh God, \_\_\_\_\_, because last year he managed to ruin the day for all of us.
4. *Pat:* You have to finish this project by Monday at the latest, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Sheila:* Yeah, \_\_\_\_\_. Unfortunately, though, I don't know how I can do it, because I'll be out of town all weekend.
5. *Gülsün:* Are you going to get a discount on those shoes?  
*Arzu:* Well, \_\_\_\_\_, because I certainly can't afford them otherwise.
6. *Randy:* You didn't lose your textbook for Professor de Mure's class, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Ed:* Oh, \_\_\_\_\_, because I don't have the money to buy another one.
7. *Phil:* Have you ever seen any of Jean-Luc Godard's movies?  
*Stan:* Umm, \_\_\_\_\_. I mean, his name doesn't sound familiar.
8. *Michael:* You failed the final exam in Mr. Adolph's class, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Rob:* \_\_\_\_\_. Now I have to take the course again in order to be able to graduate.
9. *Eda:* Do you think that you're going to do well on the upcoming LES exam?  
*Aslıhan:* Well, \_\_\_\_\_. Otherwise, why did I even bother to study?
10. *Oya:* İlhan is going to get here late again today, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Mustafa:* Actually, \_\_\_\_\_. He just called and said that the traffic is really light this morning.
11. *Kelly:* Do we have a small screwdriver anywhere?  
*Chuck:* \_\_\_\_\_—check in the tool box in the garage.
12. *Clive:* You're going to come to the party tonight, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Jonathan:* Oh, \_\_\_\_\_, because I've got a lot of housework to do.
13. *Kate:* Are we going to write a composition for our Turkish final exam?  
*Gill:* \_\_\_\_\_, because my Turkish is not really good enough yet.
14. *Eray:* You haven't had a chance to look at my composition yet, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Yasin:* \_\_\_\_\_. I've been very busy with my own work.
15. *Andy:* Richard won't work here next year, \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Dave:* \_\_\_\_\_. I saw him this morning, and he was looking through the job ads.

9

Complete the dialogue by using:



- a) an appropriate question tag;
- b) an auxiliary verb with "too", "either", "so", or "neither"
- c) "so", "not", or "too" alone.

### An Interesting Coincidence

Hande is trying to tell Tuna about her weekend, but unfortunately for her, Tuna keeps interrupting her.

Hande: I had an absolutely lovely weekend ...

Tuna: (1) \_\_\_\_\_ !! Weekends are great, (2) \_\_\_\_\_?

Hande: Umm, yes. Anyway, do you know what happened to me this weekend?

Tuna: No, no—go ahead and tell me, I'm dying to hear!

Hande: Well, I was walking along İstiklâl Street ...

Tuna: Really? (3) \_\_\_\_\_ !! What a coincidence! When were you there?

Hande: Umm, well, Sunday morning, but I wasn't there for very long ...

Tuna: Oh, I (4) \_\_\_\_\_ —an hour or so at the most. I mean, I love İstiklâl Street, but it gets so crowded at weekends, (5) \_\_\_\_\_?

Hande: Yes, yes, I think (6) \_\_\_\_\_. Anyhow, I was walking down the street, and I wasn't feeling very well.

Tuna: You're kidding me! (7) \_\_\_\_\_ !! You see, I had some eggs for breakfast, and I guess they were bad, because my stomach was spinning crazily soon after breakfast. You can never really trust eggs, (8) \_\_\_\_\_?

Hande: Umm, no, I suppose (9) \_\_\_\_\_. Anyway, I wasn't feeling very well, and so I sat down at an outdoor table of the Le Zîz Café to rest for a bit ...

Tuna: Really? That's amazing, because I (10) \_\_\_\_\_!

Hande: Well, that's just fascinating, (11) \_\_\_\_\_? Anyhow, I didn't really want anything to eat or drink ...

Tuna: Oh, I (12) \_\_\_\_\_. I've never liked their food, or their service. I mean, they're not *lezîz* at all! In fact, they're just terrible, (13) \_\_\_\_\_?

Hande: Umm, I guess (14) \_\_\_\_\_. Anyway, I was resting there, and the waiter approached me to ask what I wanted ...

Tuna: Really? He approached me, (15) \_\_\_\_\_!

Hande: Well, that's not really surprising, (16) \_\_\_\_\_? I mean, that's his job, (17) \_\_\_\_\_?

Tuna: Of course! But I find him to be a very sweet man—and I think that he's quite handsome as well.

Hande: (18) \_\_\_\_\_ I, and that's part of my story. You see, I told him that I just wanted to rest a little. He said okay, and then—because there were no other customers and he wasn't very busy—we started talking to each other ...

Tuna: (19) \_\_\_\_\_ we! Let me guess—you started talking about Atilla İlhan's poetry, (20) \_\_\_\_\_?

Hande: Actually, yes. Hmm, that's strange. Anyhow, we were talking, and then ...

Tuna: And then what? What? Out with it!

Hande: He asked me out on a date!

Tuna: Really? He asked me, (21) \_\_\_\_\_!

Hande: What?

Tuna: Yes! But now that you've told me your story, I don't think that I trust him at all.

Hande: Oh, (22) \_\_\_\_\_ I. That's for certain.

Tuna: And I'm certainly not going to go on a date with him.

Hande: Oh, I (23) \_\_\_\_\_. That's even more certain.

Tuna: Actually, I think that we should go and confront him about his actions.

Hande: Oh, (24) \_\_\_\_\_ I. Come on—let's go!

# UNIT 18

## Expressing Quantity: countable and uncountable nouns

### REVISION

1 Read the following sentences carefully and try to find some rules about *nouns*.

1. There are more than fifty sheep on my uncle's farm.
2. There's a lot of flour, but very little sugar at home. And also, there isn't enough yoghurt, so we can't make a cake.
3. How much time is going to be given? How many workers are going to help us? We must know all these things before we start the job.
4. A lot of people are unemployed in our country because there aren't enough jobs.
5. She doesn't have any patience with children, so she can't be a good teacher.
6. A: Look! There is a sheep in your garden.  
B: I know. We're raising it for *Kurban Bayrami*.
7. A: Was there any money in your bag, Madam?  
B: Yes, there was some.  
A: And were there any other valuable things in it?  
B: Yes, there were some important documents.
8. There are very few books on the subject of my thesis, so I'm having a lot of difficulty preparing it.

Now, complete the sentences below with the words in the box.

|                    |                  |                  |                 |             |
|--------------------|------------------|------------------|-----------------|-------------|
| <i>irregular</i>   | <i>countable</i> | <i>fluids</i>    | <i>a lot of</i> | <i>no</i>   |
| <i>uncountable</i> | <i>plural</i>    | <i>happiness</i> | <i>no</i>       | <i>rice</i> |
| <i>meat</i>        | <i>mice</i>      | <i>enough</i>    | <i>few</i>      | <i>fish</i> |
| <i>some</i>        | <i>much</i>      | <i>singular</i>  | <i>little</i>   | <i>any</i>  |
| <i>any</i>         | <i>many</i>      | <i>regular</i>   | <i>not any</i>  |             |

1. The quantity of \_\_\_\_\_ nouns can be expressed with numbers, such as one foot, five feet, etc. But numbers cannot be used with \_\_\_\_\_ nouns.
2. Uncountable nouns can be divided into four groups: \_\_\_\_\_, e.g. water and milk; particles, e.g. sugar and \_\_\_\_\_; mass nouns, e.g. butter and \_\_\_\_\_; and abstract nouns, e.g. patience, courage, and \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Some quantifiers can be used with both countable and uncountable nouns. These are \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_. But the difference is that, when they are used with these quantifiers, countable nouns take \_\_\_\_\_ verbs, but uncountable nouns take \_\_\_\_\_ verbs.
4. The quantifiers \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ are only used with countable nouns; \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ are only used with uncountable nouns.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ countable nouns take *-s* for their plural forms, e.g. books. But \_\_\_\_\_ countable nouns have two types of plural: one is that the noun has some changes in its plural form, e.g. children and \_\_\_\_\_; the other is that the noun remains the same in its singular and plural forms, e.g. sheep and \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The word "\_\_\_\_\_ " can be used instead of "\_\_\_\_\_ " with both countable and uncountable nouns, so, instead of saying, "I haven't got \_\_\_\_\_ money," we can say "I've got \_\_\_\_\_ money."


2

Complete the sentences with the words in the box. Use each of them twice.

any                      some                      much                      many                      no

- A: How \_\_\_\_\_ money did you have when you were on holiday?  
B: Well, we didn't have \_\_\_\_\_, so we couldn't do most of what we wanted.
- A: I couldn't find \_\_\_\_\_ books in the school library for my assignment. Not even one.  
B: There may be \_\_\_\_\_ in the public library. You should go there.
- There aren't \_\_\_\_\_ green areas in our town, so the ones we have are always very crowded.
- There was \_\_\_\_\_ fresh fruit at the market, so I couldn't buy \_\_\_\_\_. We'll have to do without it tonight.
- A: How \_\_\_\_\_ people were there at the party?  
B: Around twenty, but it was a strange party.  
A: Why?  
B: All the guests were females. There were \_\_\_\_\_ males.
- I need \_\_\_\_\_ information about the Inuit way of life. Do you think Brian could help me?

Study the box.



**few / a few, little / a little**

**Few** and **a few** are used with countable nouns.

few = very few (*not enough*)                      a few (*not many, but enough*)

I have **a few friends** here, and we are quite happy together.  
Sue has (**very**) **few friends**, so she often feels lonely.

**Little** and **a little** are used with uncountable nouns.

little = very little (*not enough*)                      a little (*not much, but enough*)

We have **a little money**. Shall we go for a coffee?  
We have (**very**) **little money**, so I'm afraid we have to stay at home tonight.

3

Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

few                      a few                      little                      a little

- She has \_\_\_\_\_ chance of passing the exam because she hasn't studied at all.
- There are \_\_\_\_\_ apples in the fridge. Shall we make an apple pie?
- I'm afraid we won't be able to finish the order in time. We have \_\_\_\_\_ workers at the moment.
- You shouldn't choose teaching as your future career, Jane, because you have \_\_\_\_\_ patience with children.
- Look! There's \_\_\_\_\_ information about whales in this magazine. Perhaps you can use it for your assignment.
- We have \_\_\_\_\_ minutes before our train leaves. Why don't we go into that café for a drink?
- We had \_\_\_\_\_ time before the departure of the train, so we went for a drink.
- You have lovely furniture, but \_\_\_\_\_ plants would make this room look better.

**4**

Read the passage about the problems of Istanbul. Then complete the table below as in the example. Use *“too many, too much, not enough”* in stating the problems, and *“should”* in stating the solutions.

### **A Wonder is Becoming a Nightmare**

We all know that Istanbul, unique in the world for being a city that spans two continents, is a wonderful city, with its historical places, natural beauty, and its famous Bosphorus. But living in this city is becoming a nightmare day by day because it has many problems.

Every year, hundreds of thousands of people leave their homes and come to Istanbul in the hope of better living conditions. Because of these years of migration, the city has now become overcrowded. There is an apparent solution to slow down this migration: to create job opportunities in other places in Turkey. Then, fewer people will want to leave their hometowns. This should be done immediately because overpopulation causes other problems in Istanbul. Municipalities are finding it difficult to provide enough infrastructure services, such as public transport, roads, water, etc., for so many people. As a result, there is now a traffic jam at almost any time of day. Building a metro, an underground railway system, seems to be the best solution. Then we won't need so many buses and minibuses, so the number of vehicles on the roads will be reduced.

Finding a parking place is also a great problem in big business centres because they are usually in old settlements, and the streets are very narrow. Building multi-storey car parks near centres will certainly ease the problem.

And there's the water problem. Certain parts of the city are always short of water. This is partly because the two water sources, Terkos, on the European side, and Ömerli Dam, on the Asian side, are not enough for all the population, but a more important cause is that a lot of water is wasted through leaks from water pipes, because they are very old. By replacing them with new ones, however, the shortage of water can be avoided.

Air pollution is another big problem that threatens Istanbul. Smoke from low-quality coal makes the air terribly polluted during the winter months. The use of natural gas could help to solve this problem. It should be made compulsory so that people can breathe clean air in Istanbul.

| <u>Problem</u>   | <u>Cause</u>   | <u>Suggested solution</u>  |
|--|--|--|
| 1. people<br><i>There are too many people in Istanbul.</i> | <i>A lot of people migrate to Istanbul every year.</i> | <i>This migration should be slowed down by creating job opportunities in other places.</i> |
| 2. traffic<br>_____  | _____  | _____  |
| 3. water<br>_____  | _____  | _____  |
| 4. air pollution<br>_____                                  | _____  | _____  |
| 5. car parks<br>_____                                      | _____  | _____  |

**DISCUSSION:** Your city/town must have similar or other problems. Discuss these problems with your classmates. Give their causes and suggest solutions. Try to use *too much, too many, not enough, not any, (very) few, no, etc.* in your sentences.





**7 The Industrial Revolution**

**A. Complete the passage using the most appropriate quantifier: "a few", "a lot (of)", "any", "few", "little", "many", "much", and "no". Some blanks can have more than one answer.**

The 18th- and 19th-century Industrial Revolution created many changes. There were changes in society and changes in technology. Some of the technological changes later caused changes in the environment. These changes have affected and are still affecting the entire world.

Before the Industrial Revolution, there were (1) \_\_\_\_\_ factories around the world, but after it there were (2) \_\_\_\_\_ of them all over the world. There didn't use to be (3) \_\_\_\_\_ machine tools at all either, like drills, but now there are (4) \_\_\_\_\_ different kinds. There was (5) \_\_\_\_\_ mass production before the Industrial Revolution, only a little in the city of Venice, but afterwards, mass production was everywhere. Because of mass production, making paper and books became cheaper, and so (6) \_\_\_\_\_ people learnt to read; before the Industrial Revolution, very (7) \_\_\_\_\_ people could read. Also, there wasn't (8) \_\_\_\_\_ use of fossil fuels like coal, oil, and natural gas, only at a limited level. Now, of course, fossil fuels are used (9) \_\_\_\_\_, in factories and other places. Because of this, and for other reasons too, there is also (10) \_\_\_\_\_ air pollution, and the ozone layer has developed (11) \_\_\_\_\_ holes here and there; there didn't use to be (12) \_\_\_\_\_ holes in the ozone layer at all.

Before the Industrial Revolution, there were not (13) \_\_\_\_\_ steam-powered devices, but only a few. Afterwards, however, there were (14) \_\_\_\_\_ them. One of the most important steam-powered devices in the Industrial Revolution was the steam locomotive: before the Industrial Revolution, there was (15) \_\_\_\_\_ rail transport, only (16) \_\_\_\_\_ horse-powered wagonways; but now, there are (17) \_\_\_\_\_ railroads all over the world. Also, there used to be (18) \_\_\_\_\_ automobiles, because only the very rich could afford them. Now, of course, automobiles are everywhere, but because of them, there is also (19) \_\_\_\_\_ noise pollution. Fast long-distance communication is another creation of the Industrial Revolution: beforehand, there were (20) \_\_\_\_\_ kinds of fast long-distance communication, just drums and smoke signals in some places. Today, there are (21) \_\_\_\_\_ different kinds of fast long-distance communication: telegraphs, telephones, radios, televisions, the Internet, and more. Using electricity also began in the Industrial Revolution: before it, there were only (22) \_\_\_\_\_ small electrical devices; now, there are (23) \_\_\_\_\_ of them.

The mining industry also changed in the Industrial Revolution. There used to be very (24) \_\_\_\_\_ deep mines, because it was difficult to go deep safely, but during the Industrial Revolution, (25) \_\_\_\_\_ deep mines began to open. Because of more mining, and more factories, (26) \_\_\_\_\_ labour unions also began in the Industrial Revolution; before this period, there was not (27) \_\_\_\_\_ organized labour, but only a little bit in some places. Also, large corporations are mostly a product of the Industrial Revolution: there were only (28) \_\_\_\_\_ large corporations before it, but afterwards and today, they are everywhere. Because of the large number of large corporations, there are also (29) \_\_\_\_\_ office workers today, but before the Industrial Revolution there were very (30) \_\_\_\_\_.

**B. In groups, discuss whether the changes in the following list are environmental changes, social changes, or technological changes. Then, place the changes in the appropriate column(s) on the table.**

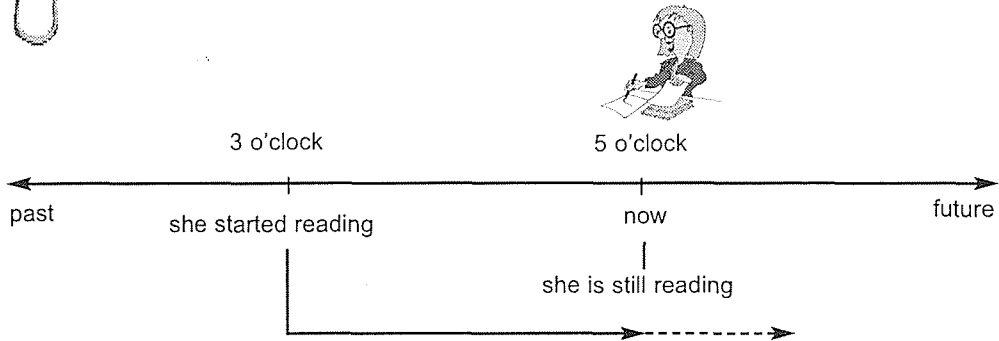
*air pollution; automobiles; deep mines; electrical devices; factories; fast long-distance communication; holes in the ozone layer; labour unions/organized labour; large corporations; literacy (i.e., the ability to read); machine tools; mass production; noise pollution; office workers; railroads/rail transport; steam-powered devices; use of fossil fuels*

| Environmental Changes | Social Changes | Technological Changes |
|-----------------------|----------------|-----------------------|
|                       |                |                       |

# UNIT 19

## PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS

1. Use the **present perfect continuous** tense for actions that started in the past and continue to the time of speaking.



Sally **has been reading** a book since 3 o'clock/for two hours.

2. Use this tense when there is evidence that an activity has happened.

A: Sue's got some shopping bags in her hands.  
 B: Yes, she **has been shopping** for her dinner party tonight.



- 1** Ask questions with "how long" and "when" as in the example.

e.g. move to this city/work in this job

A: When did you move to this city?  
 B: In 1990.  
 A: How long have you been working in this job?  
 B: Since last year.

1. start teaching in this school/teach your class

A: \_\_\_\_\_ Mr Richards \_\_\_\_\_?  
 B: Three years ago.  
 A: \_\_\_\_\_?  
 B: Since the beginning of this term.

2. tour around Turkey/leave England for their round-the-world tour

A: \_\_\_\_\_ Jim and Keith \_\_\_\_\_?  
 B: For about a month.  
 A: \_\_\_\_\_?  
 B: Nearly nine months ago.

3. burn fiercely/first notice it

A: \_\_\_\_\_ the fire \_\_\_\_\_?  
 B: More than half an hour.  
 A: \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_?  
 B: An hour ago, I think. I tried to put it out myself because it seemed a small fire at first.

4. put the cake in the oven/boil

A: \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_?  
 B: Oh, about one-and-a-half hours ago, I suppose.  
 A: \_\_\_\_\_ the kettle \_\_\_\_\_?  
 B: For half an hour now.  
 A: Now I understand why the cake is burnt and there is no water in the kettle.

**2** Write the second parts of the dialogues using the words in the box.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <input type="radio"/> walk in the rain for an hour | <input type="radio"/> chop onions for the salad    |
| <input type="radio"/> drive in heavy traffic       | <input checked="" type="radio"/> work hard all day |
| <input type="radio"/> sunbathe all afternoon       |  |

- A: You look very tired.  
B: Absolutely. *I have been working hard all day.*
- A: Oh, dear! You're crying.  
B: Oh, \_\_\_\_\_
- A: Come in and change your clothes immediately. You're absolutely soaked.  
B: Well, \_\_\_\_\_
- A: I can't believe it! You're late for our date again.  
B: Sorry, \_\_\_\_\_
- A: Oh, Jenny. You're very red.  
B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_

**3** Ask questions with "how long" using the given words. Then decide which answer in the box goes best with which question.

1. Vincent and Valerie/go out

A: How long have Vincent and Valerie been going out?  
B: Since they first met at my birthday party.

2. Europeans/use tobacco

A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: \_\_\_\_\_

3. people/damage the environment

A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: \_\_\_\_\_

4. it/rain like this

A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: \_\_\_\_\_

5. man/send things into space

A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: \_\_\_\_\_

- a) mostly since the beginning of the Industrial Revolution
- b) since Sir Walter Raleigh, the 16th-century adventurer, introduced it to them
- c) since the launch of *Sputnik 1*, the first man-made satellite
- ✓ d) since they first met at my birthday party
- e) since yesterday morning

**Study the box.**

**Present Perfect Simple or Present Perfect Continuous**

**Present Perfect Simple**

- a) With the adverbs *ever, never, yet, just, already, so far*  
I **have never smoked**.  
She **has just left** home
- b) When you want to stress the result of the action  
I **have put** the cake in the oven  
Someone **has stolen** my wallet
- c) When you mention how many times the action is repeated or how much of the action is completed  
The car **has broken down** twice this week  
I **have read** forty pages of the book
- d) With non-progressive verbs like *be, know, have (=have got)*  
I **have been** a teacher for ten years  
She's **had** that car for two years

**Present Perfect Continuous**

- a) For actions starting in the past, continuing to the present  
She **has been crying** for half an hour  
They **have been going** out for two months
- b) For actions with present evidence  
The streets are wet It **has been raining**.  
Her eyes are watery She **has been crying**.

**4 Match the beginning of the sentence with the best ending.**

- 1. It has snowed twice so far this winter
- 2. \_\_\_\_\_ since she came into the office this morning
- 3. \_\_\_\_\_ more than half of the report
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_ steadily for more than three days
- 5. \_\_\_\_\_ almost half of the way
- 6. \_\_\_\_\_ without a break since we started the journey at dawn

- a) It has been snowing
- ✓ b) It has snowed
- c) We've been driving
- d) She's been typing
- e) We've driven
- f) She's typed

**5** Complete the sentences using the *present perfect simple* or *present perfect continuous* of the verbs in parentheses.

- A: Why are you so out of breath?  
B: I \_\_\_\_\_ (run) fast to get home in time for my favourite programme.
- A: \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (taste) the coffee yet?  
B: No, why?  
A: Don't try it. I \_\_\_\_\_ (put) salt in it instead of sugar. It's horrible!
- She \_\_\_\_\_ (write) letters all morning, and so far, I think she \_\_\_\_\_ (write) about ten.
- A: How long \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (parachute), Stan?  
B: Almost two years.  
A: And how many jumps \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (do) so far?  
B: Oh, about twenty I think.
- A: What's this smoke in here?  
B: Well, I think someone \_\_\_\_\_ (smoke).
- Marjorie and I \_\_\_\_\_ (know) each other since primary school.
- Joyce \_\_\_\_\_ just \_\_\_\_\_ (hear) that she \_\_\_\_\_ (pass) the university entrance exam, so she's busy telephoning everyone to tell them the good news.
- Ow! I \_\_\_\_\_ (cut) myself! Quick! Get me a plaster.
- There must be something wrong with his telephone. I \_\_\_\_\_ (dial) his number for the last hour and it \_\_\_\_\_ (be) engaged the whole time.
- A: Why is Craig's face so red?  
B: Oh, he \_\_\_\_\_ (play) tennis all afternoon.
- They \_\_\_\_\_ (play) for half an hour and no one \_\_\_\_\_ (score) a goal yet.
- A: Why is your hair wet?  
B: Because I \_\_\_\_\_ (swim).

**6** Complete the sentences using the *present perfect simple*, *present perfect continuous*, *past simple* or *past continuous* of the verbs in parentheses.

- A: How long \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (have) that painting?  
B: I \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) it two years ago when I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) in Egypt.
- While I \_\_\_\_\_ (get) dressed, I \_\_\_\_\_ (catch) my foot in the hem of my skirt and \_\_\_\_\_ (tear) it.
- She \_\_\_\_\_ (dance) energetically for the last hour. I can't believe that she isn't tired yet!
- Oh, you \_\_\_\_\_ (change) your hair! It looks lovely.
- Those two \_\_\_\_\_ (whisper) secretly in the corner since I \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) in, and yesterday, they \_\_\_\_\_ (act) just as strangely.
- A: Why is Max breathing so heavily?  
B: He \_\_\_\_\_ (jog).
- There \_\_\_\_\_ (not, be) any good films on at the cinema for ages. The last one \_\_\_\_\_ (be) over a month ago.
- A: Why is his ankle bandaged up? \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_ (break) it?  
B: No, he \_\_\_\_\_ (sprain) it. He \_\_\_\_\_ (trip) while he \_\_\_\_\_ (take) the dog for a walk last Saturday.
- Since she \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) a dishwasher two months ago, she \_\_\_\_\_ (not, wash) anything by hand.
- Look at this awful weather. Just think, at this time last week, I \_\_\_\_\_ (lie) on a beach in Jamaica.
- I can't believe they're selling that house. It \_\_\_\_\_ (belong) to their family for centuries.
- A: What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (laugh) about when I \_\_\_\_\_ (come) in?  
B: Oh, nothing. Just a silly joke!

## 7 Who? Me?

A. Read the passages below about famous people from the past; then, look at their pictures in Picture 6 (*Who? Me?*) at the end of the book from when they were naughty children. Using the passage and the pictures, match the people to their pictures.

1 **Karl Benz** (1844–1929) was the son of a locomotive engineer, and he followed in his father’s footsteps and earned a degree in mechanical engineering. He eventually started his own mechanical workshop. There, he invented a number of mechanical parts: the spark plug, the carburetor, the gear shift, the water radiator, and so on. A few years later, in 1885, he had the idea to put these different parts together onto a bicycle-like body: this was the Benz Patent Motorwagen, and it was the world’s first automobile.

2 **Napoléon Bonaparte** (1769–1821) was a general of the French Revolution. He eventually became the leader of the French Republic, and then Emperor of the French and King of Italy. While he was serving as a military commander and political leader, he conquered a large part of Europe. He is generally considered one of the greatest military commanders ever, and his battle campaigns are still studied in military academies all over the world. Eventually, he was defeated by a combined European force at the 1815 Battle of Waterloo.

3 **Hernán Cortés** (1485–1547) was serving as the mayor and judge of the city of Santiago in Cuba in 1518, when México was discovered by a Spanish sailor. The governor of Cuba chose Cortés to start a colony in México, but Cortés had bigger goals. At the time, a large part of México was controlled by the wealthy Aztec Empire. With his more advanced weapons and his cunning, Cortés destroyed this empire and took over México. He sent gold, jewels, and the native chocolate back to Spain, and for the next seven years—until 1528—ruled over México as a dictator.

4 **Benjamin Franklin** (1706–1790) was a man with many talents: he was a printer, a diplomat, a scientist, an inventor, a practical philosopher, a composer, an educator, and a public servant. He started the first public library in the United States, and his diplomatic skills helped the Americans to win the American Revolution. He invented bifocal glasses, the glass armonica—a musical instrument—and discovered, in a famous experiment with a kite, lightning’s electrical nature. From 1732 to 1757, he published *Poor Richard’s Almanack*: in this book, he created many proverbs, and these are still popular in American English today.

5 **Alfred Nobel** (1833–1896) was the son of an inventor and manufacturer. When his father retired, Alfred discovered his father’s experiments with the dangerous chemical nitroglycerin. He continued these experiments, and devoted his time to the development of explosives. His experiments caused many accidents: one explosion even killed Alfred’s brother and several workers. In the end, Alfred created dynamite and several other explosives, and made lots of money. After his death, his money was used to set up the Nobel prizes. These prizes are still awarded today.

6 **Walter Raleigh** (1554?–1618) was a politician and poet, a sailor and soldier, an explorer and a historian. He was one of the most popular people in the court of Queen Elizabeth I, and he organized the first attempts to start English colonies in the Americas; from these journeys, he brought tobacco back to England, and made it popular throughout Europe. After Queen Elizabeth died in 1603, Raleigh became unpopular, and he was arrested for attempting to remove the new king, James I, from the throne. In 1618, he was killed for this.

7 **Leonardo da Vinci** (1452–1519) was the original “Renaissance man”: a painter, sculptor, architect, and man of science. He has left us only 17 paintings, but some of those paintings are among the most well-known in the world: the *Virgin of the Rocks*, the *Last Supper*, and of course, the *Mona Lisa*. But perhaps his most interesting work is his notebooks: in them, there are hundreds of drawings of human anatomy, designs and potential inventions—a helicopter, a bridge over the Golden Horn, a tank—and mathematical speculations. In the history of the world, there have been few people as creative as Leonardo da Vinci.

8

a) Complete the passage using the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Pay attention to whether the verb is active or passive.



### The Panda

There are two types of panda: the lesser, or red panda, from the forest areas of the Himalayas and western China; and the giant panda. This is the better-known of the two animals, and it (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (*find*) only in the cool, damp bamboo forests of mountainous western China.

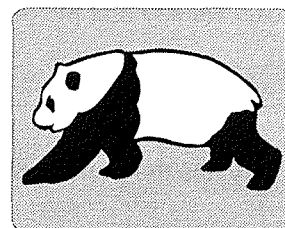
For a long time, Western scientists (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (*not, know*) anything at all about the giant panda. It (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (*first, describe*) to them in 1869 by the French naturalist, Père David. And it (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (*first, see*) in a zoo outside China in 1936. Since then, it (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) one of the world's favourite animals.

The giant panda (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (*resemble*) a bear, but for many years, people (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (*think*) it (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) related to the raccoon, a smaller, tree-living animal. But recent studies (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (*show*) that, in fact, it (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) linked to the bear family. But the red panda (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) indeed related to the raccoon family.

Giant pandas (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (*grow*) to a great size. The adults (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (*may, weigh*) 150 kilograms or more and they (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (*can, reach*) nearly two metres in length. They (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) thick woolly black- and cream-coloured coats. The darker colour (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (*cover*) the ears, legs and chest, and (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (*form*) a band across the shoulders. But they (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (*know*) particularly for the dark patches they (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) round their eyes. They (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (*spend*) much of their time chewing bamboo shoots—their main food. For many years, people (21) \_\_\_\_\_ (*believe*) that pandas (22) \_\_\_\_\_ (*only, eat*) bamboo, but in recent years, it (23) \_\_\_\_\_ (*discover*) that they (24) \_\_\_\_\_ (*may, feed*) on other plants and, occasionally, they (25) \_\_\_\_\_ (*even, eat*) small animals.

In the 1930s, the giant panda population (26) \_\_\_\_\_ (*suffer*) because they (27) \_\_\_\_\_ (*become*) very popular in zoos. But now, pandas (28) \_\_\_\_\_ (*protect*) by the Chinese government, and reserves and breeding centres (29) \_\_\_\_\_ (*establish*). But the panda (30) \_\_\_\_\_ (*still, face*) many threats to its survival. In the last ten years, its population (31) \_\_\_\_\_ (*drop*) sharply. This (32) \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) partly because areas of its habitat (33) \_\_\_\_\_ (*take over*) by humans, but also because of its preference for eating bamboo. This plant (34) \_\_\_\_\_ (*live*) for one hundred years, but when it (35) \_\_\_\_\_ (*flower*), it (36) \_\_\_\_\_ (*die*), and many plants (37) \_\_\_\_\_ (*now, flower*).

Man (38) \_\_\_\_\_ (*try*) hard to help this popular animal since it (39) \_\_\_\_\_ (*declare*) endangered, but its future (40) \_\_\_\_\_ (*cannot, guarantee*) because we (41) \_\_\_\_\_ (*still, not, know*) enough about it.



**b) Find the words in the passage with the same meaning as the following ones.**

- 1. *look like* (paragraph 3) \_\_\_\_\_
- 2. *really* (paragraph 3) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. *grown-ups* (paragraph 4) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. *especially* (paragraph 4) \_\_\_\_\_
- 5. *sometimes* (paragraph 4) \_\_\_\_\_
- 6. *dangers* (paragraph 5) \_\_\_\_\_
- 7. *natural surroundings* (paragraph 5) \_\_\_\_\_
- 8. *near extinction* (paragraph 6) \_\_\_\_\_

**c) Answer the following questions.**

- 1. What is the giant panda like?  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2. Where is the giant panda's habitat?  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3. How did Western scientists learn about the giant panda?  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4. Which family does the giant panda belong to?  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5. What does the giant panda eat?  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6. What has the Chinese government done to protect giant pandas?  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 7. Can we say that the government has been successful in its attempts? Why/Why not?  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 8. Why has the panda population dropped sharply in the last ten years?  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_





Put the verbs in parentheses into an appropriate tense: *Past Simple, Past Continuous, Present Perfect Simple, or Present Perfect Continuous.*

## A Crime Unsolved

*There has been a murder! Inspector Tricksome and his loyal assistant Mr. Abbott are interviewing Mr. Tobias Cruta, a suspect in the case.*

- Tricksome: So, Mr. Abbott, how many years (1) \_\_\_\_\_ we \_\_\_\_\_ (work) together now?
- Abbott: Oh, nearly 30 years, I think.
- Tricksome: 30 years! And in that time, (2) \_\_\_\_\_ I ever \_\_\_\_\_ (fail) to capture any criminals?
- Abbott: Er ... I don't believe so.
- Tricksome: Exactly! And that, Mr. Cruta, is bad news for you!
- Mr. Cruta: But I (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) you already: I (4) \_\_\_\_\_ never \_\_\_\_\_ (commit) a crime in my whole life!
- Tricksome: Oh, we're used to lies like that, aren't we, Mr. Abbott?
- Abbott: I believe so, Mr. Tricksome.
- Tricksome: So, Mr. Cruta, tell me—what (5) \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (do) at exactly 7:42 yesterday evening?
- Abbott: (*whispering*) Er, excuse me, Mr. Tricksome—don't you mean 8:42?
- Tricksome: (*whispering*) Of course, of course. I am trying to trick the man.
- Abbott: (*whispering*) A-ha, I see.
- Tricksome: Well, Mr. Cruta ... ?
- Mr. Cruta: I (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) you earlier: I (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) TV at home lying on the couch.
- Tricksome: And at what time (8) \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (start) watching TV?
- Mr. Cruta: Oh, I don't know—probably about 5 o'clock or so.
- Tricksome: And when (9) \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (finish)?
- Mr. Cruta: At half past eight, I suppose. My favourite show (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (end) and I (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (turn) the TV off.
- Tricksome: (*whispering*) A-ha! You see, Mr. Abbott! I (12) \_\_\_\_\_ just \_\_\_\_\_ (catch) him in my trap!
- Abbott: (*whispering*) Er, perhaps. But why don't you ask him some more questions?
- Tricksome: So, Mr. Cruta—how many years (13) \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) this "favourite show"?
- Mr. Cruta: Umm ... I don't know. Four or five years, I suppose.
- Tricksome: And in all those years, (14) \_\_\_\_\_ you ever \_\_\_\_\_ (miss) the show?
- Mr. Cruta: Actually, I don't think so. I'm a very loyal viewer.
- Tricksome: And what is the name of this "favourite show"?
- Mr. Cruta: It's called *Love on the Line*.
- Abbott: Excuse me, Mr. Cruta, but may I ask you a question?
- Mr. Cruta: Of course.
- Abbott: Are you unaware that the television station (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (cancel) *Love on the Line* last week?
- Mr. Cruta: What?!? No! That's terrible!
- Abbott: Yes, very terrible, very terrible, I know.
- Tricksome: Terrible for you, of course, Mr. Cruta. Now, let me ask you this—(16) \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (lie) to me this whole time?
- Mr. Cruta: What?!? No! Of course not!

# UNIT 20

## Gerunds and Infinitives

Certain verbs in English are followed by other verbs. These second verbs, **gerunds** or **infinitives**, function as the object of the main verb.

I like **coffee**.

I want **some coffee**.

I like **swimming**. (*swimming*: gerund)

I want **to drink** some coffee. (*to drink*: infinitive)

### 1. GERUNDS

#### a) Common verbs followed by the gerund:

*avoid*  
*can't help*  
*can't stand*

*delay*  
*enjoy*  
*finish*

*give up*  
*go on*  
*keep (on)*

*(don't) mind*  
*practise*  
*risk*

I **avoid going** jogging when it's too hot. / I **don't mind getting** up early.

#### b) Gerunds after prepositions:

She is good **at remembering** names.

I'm looking forward **to hearing** from you. (*to* is a preposition here)

She passed the exam **by studying** hard.

#### c) Gerunds as the subject of a sentence:

**Collecting antiques** is her hobby. / **Taking photographs** is great fun.

### 2. INFINITIVES

#### a) Common verbs followed by the infinitive:

*agree*  
*decide*  
*expect*  
*forget*

*hope*  
*learn*  
*manage*  
*offer*

*promise*  
*remember*  
*try*  
*want*

*warn*  
*wish*  
*would like*

Mary **wishes to be** an artist. / They **decided not to move** to the city.

The following verbs can take an object before the infinitive:

*want*    *expect*    *warn*    *wish*    *would like*

I'd **like to have** a break,    (*Who wants it? — I do.*    *Who will have a break? — I will.*)

I'd like **you to have** a break. (*Who wants it? — I do.*    *Who will have a break? — You will.*)

#### b) After question words:

*e.g. know how to repair things, teach how to drive, decide where to go on holiday*

I don't know **what to buy** for Jenny. / Have you decided **where to go** on holiday?

#### c) After certain adjectives and nouns:

It's easy **to learn** English. / Her aim is **to be** a famous musician.

### 3. INFINITIVE OR GERUND:

Some verbs take both the infinitive and the gerund, with no or little change in meaning.

*begin*  
*start*

*continue*  
*like*

*can't bear*  
*love*

*intend*  
*hate*

I **can't bear seeing/to see** people in pain. / When I left home, it **started raining/to rain**.

I **hate to go out** in this rain. (*specific*)

I **hate getting up** early in cold weather. (*in general*)

**1**

Complete the dialogue using the “gerund” or “infinitive” form of the verbs in parentheses, and with the endings below.

*Emre is going on a camping holiday in Greece with four other friends. His mother, anxious about her son, is giving him some advice.*

**Mother:** Who is going to drive the jeep?

**Emre:** Well, we all are. We'll take turns.

**Mother:** Okay. I know you are a careful driver, but always warn the others **(1)** \_\_\_\_\_  
(drive) slowly and carefully. \_\_\_\_\_

**Emre:** Okay. Don't worry about it.

**Mother:** Where will you stay at nights?

**Emre:** In the tent, of course.

**Mother:** Okay. Try **(2)** \_\_\_\_\_ (put up) your tent at camping sites or near resorts.

\_\_\_\_\_

And also, remember **(3)** \_\_\_\_\_ (check) inside the tent and your sleeping bag carefully before you go to sleep. \_\_\_\_\_

And what about food?

**Emre:** Well, sometimes we'll eat at restaurants, and sometimes we'll cook for ourselves.

**Mother:** Then, when you go to the restaurants, avoid **(4)** \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) strange dishes.  
\_\_\_\_\_ And water is a big problem in such places. Try **(5)** \_\_\_\_\_ (not, drink) tap water.

**Emre:** Okay, Mum. I will.

**Mother:** And most important of all, avoid **(6)** \_\_\_\_\_ (dive) into the sea from high cliffs.

**Emre:** No, Mum. I won't.

**Mother:** I know you like **(7)** \_\_\_\_\_ (sunbathe), but avoid **(8)** \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) in the sun too long. \_\_\_\_\_

And finally, don't forget **(9)** \_\_\_\_\_ (take) your mobile phone with you. I expect you **(10)** \_\_\_\_\_ (call) me every day. You know I can't stand **(11)** \_\_\_\_\_ (not, hear) from you.

**Emre:** Don't worry, Mum. I promise **(12)** \_\_\_\_\_ (phone) you every night just before I go to bed!

**a)** A place away from other people could be unsafe at night.

**b)** You don't know the roads there and something unexpected might happen.

**c)** You might get an infection.

**d)** You could smash your head on the rocks.

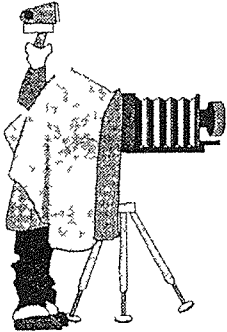
**e)** The food could make you ill.

**f)** You might get badly sunburnt.

**g)** There might be poisonous insects.

**2** Complete the passages with the *gerund* or *infinitive* form of the verbs in parentheses.

Ceren, Serdar and Taner all go to a boarding school. They only go home during the holidays. But life is not all work and no play there. There are a lot of activities at the school. Here's what they say about their activities.

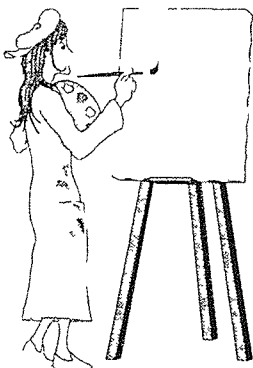
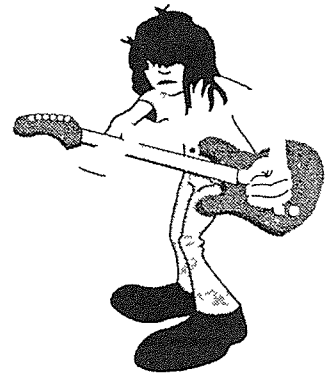


Taner

I'm a member of the photographic club. My uncle brought me a fabulous camera from Germany for my last birthday, and Mr Kerim, our physics teacher, showed me how (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (develop) the films and make prints from the negatives. I'm interested in (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (take) photographs of everything, but I like (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (photograph) people for portraits best. Last term, we had a photo competition, and I managed (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (win) second prize with a picture of Serdar.

My main hobby is music. I like (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (play) the piano best, but we haven't got a piano at school, so I brought my guitar here, and in my spare time, I practise (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (play) the latest popular songs, but of course, I avoid (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (do) it late at night because I don't want (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (disturb) my friends. I want (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (study) music at university, and I hope (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a famous musician one day. I'm going to give a performance at the end-of-term party, so I'm looking forward to (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (play) in front of the audience.

Serdar



Ceren

My main interest is art. We've got a lovely big art room at school. I like (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (paint) in water-colours and oils best. I don't like (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (draw) vases and old pots, but I know it's important for me (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (do) that, too. I would like (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to a college of art when I leave school.

- What about you? What's your hobby/interest? What do you like doing in your spare time? Do you take part in any activities at school? Write about these.

---



---



---



---



---

**3** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs given in parentheses: *gerund or infinitive*.

1. Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ (*spend*) some time in England?
2. I can't stand \_\_\_\_\_ (*listen*) to loud music.
3. Jane didn't agree \_\_\_\_\_ (*sell*) her car.
4. You should give up \_\_\_\_\_ (*eat*) so much candy if you want \_\_\_\_\_ (*lose*) weight.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*give*) presents makes me very happy.
6. Julia hopes \_\_\_\_\_ (*pass*) the exam with a high grade.
7. Would you mind \_\_\_\_\_ (*close*) the window? It's a bit cold in here.
8. I can't help \_\_\_\_\_ (*feel*) sorry for Helen. She got another bad mark.
9. I forgot \_\_\_\_\_ (*pay*) the bill on time, so they disconnected our phone.
10. Please remember \_\_\_\_\_ (*post*) this letter. It's very important.
11. She doesn't enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to parties.
12. Alan's ambition is \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a politician.
13. Have you finished \_\_\_\_\_ (*read*) the magazine?
14. I offered \_\_\_\_\_ (*help*) her, but she refused.

**4** Complete the sentences with the words in the box. Use each of them twice.

*do you like                  would you like                  would you mind*

1. A: Would you mind turning down the music please? I can't concentrate on my work.  
B: Oh, I'm very sorry.
2. A: \_\_\_\_\_ lying in the sun?  
B: Oh yes, very much.
3. A: \_\_\_\_\_ posting these letters for me?  
B: Not at all. I'm going in that direction, anyway.
4. A: \_\_\_\_\_ to come out with us?  
B: I'd rather stay at home, actually.
5. A: \_\_\_\_\_ watching TV soap operas?  
B: Occasionally—when I don't want to watch anything serious.
6. A: \_\_\_\_\_ to attend the conference?  
B: Oh yes. It'll be very useful for me.

**5** Write true sentences about yourself.

*e.g.* I'd like to speak English fluently.

1. I very much enjoy \_\_\_\_\_
2. I intend \_\_\_\_\_
3. I hope \_\_\_\_\_
4. I can't bear \_\_\_\_\_
5. I've decided \_\_\_\_\_
6. I don't mind \_\_\_\_\_
7. I hate \_\_\_\_\_
8. I'm looking forward to \_\_\_\_\_
9. I'm very good at \_\_\_\_\_
10. I never leave home without \_\_\_\_\_

6

Arzu's Dilemma

Arzu, a master's student in linguistics at Boğaziçi University, is talking to her friend Benjamin. She is going to begin her master's thesis soon, but she is having doubts about her future. Also, she has terrible trouble with gerunds and infinitives in English. Help her a little and correct her mistakes in her conversation with Benjamin.

1. Arzu: I've been talking with my master's thesis advisor all this week at the university, and in the end, we decided working on the use of gerunds and infinitives in modern spoken American English.

Benjamin: That's great! So, have you started writing yet?

Corrections: \_\_\_\_\_

2. Arzu: Not really. Actually, lately I've been thinking of to give up to write it. I just don't enjoy to study the subject anymore. But the real problem is that I just don't know why I'm doing it, because I simply have no idea what doing with my life after to graduate from university.

Benjamin: Well, what kinds of things have you considered?

Corrections: \_\_\_\_\_

3. Arzu: Well, let's see—at one point, I was hoping to become a teacher, but then I realized that I simply can't stand to speak in front of groups of people. But since I decided not being a teacher, I haven't really thought about the matter very much.

Benjamin: What about writing? Are you interested in that at all?

Corrections: \_\_\_\_\_

4. Arzu: I suppose that I wouldn't mind to write, but I don't think that I have the talent for it. I've never managed writing well at university without to get help from somebody. So I don't really want to risk to have a job that I'm not good at.

Benjamin: Of course not. But then, haven't you got any idea of what you might like doing?

Corrections: \_\_\_\_\_

5. Arzu: Not much, unfortunately. You see, my only real goal in life is trying being happy, and I just don't know what job or career really interests me.

Benjamin: Perhaps you could take a break from the thesis for a while and think about things ...

Corrections: \_\_\_\_\_

6. Arzu: Yeah, I've considered to stop to work on my thesis for a while. But then again, perhaps I won't come any closer to a decision about my life in that time.

Benjamin: Oh, you worry too much!

Corrections: \_\_\_\_\_

7. Arzu: I know, I know! I'm sorry, but I just can't help to worry! For one thing, it's a very important subject in my life, don't you think? And for another thing, I've never been able avoiding worrying—it's just part of my character.

Benjamin: Okay, okay. But if you ask me, don't abandon it. Just continue. How much time do you have for the thesis?

Corrections: \_\_\_\_\_

8. Arzu: I've got, at the most, two years finishing to write it.

Benjamin: Well then! Two years is a long time, and the thesis won't occupy every hour of every day, you know. In the meantime, you can consider how to go on with your life after graduation.

Corrections: \_\_\_\_\_

9. Arzu: Hmm ... well, I'm definitely not looking forward to just wait like that, but I guess that it is a possibility ...

Benjamin: No, not just a possibility! I want a promise.

Corrections: \_\_\_\_\_

10. Arzu: Alright, alright—I promise keeping to work on my thesis.

Benjamin: That's the spirit!

Corrections: \_\_\_\_\_

7

a) Read the passage below and then write T (*True*) or F (*False*) for the statements below.

### The TV Series



NBC has been showing the TV drama *ER* every week for many years. It is set in the emergency room of a fictional hospital in Chicago. In 1994, the first episode of *ER* was filmed in an old abandoned hospital because nobody could afford to build a set. Since then, a special set has been constructed. Because this set is located in California, the cast have to travel to Chicago to film the few outdoor scenes. George Clooney was on *ER* until 1999. He received a lot of praise for his acting. Since then, he has starred in and directed some major films. *ER* must be popular, because it has managed to win the People's Choice Award many times. In 2004, Ming-Na left the show, and so did Alex Kingston. Noah Wyle gave up acting on *ER* at the end of its eleventh season. He was the last original cast member to go. While one of the producers of *ER* was watching the film *Bend it Like Beckham*, he saw how well the British actress Parminder Nagra could act. He decided to give her a job on *ER*. She has been playing the role of Dr. Neela Rasgotra on the show ever since.

- \_\_\_ 1. Noah Wyle stayed on *ER* for longer than any other of the original cast members.
- \_\_\_ 2. *ER* is still being filmed in an old deserted hospital.
- \_\_\_ 3. Ming-Na and Alex Kingston stopped acting in *ER* in the same year.
- \_\_\_ 4. The actress Neela Rasgotra plays a character on *ER*.
- \_\_\_ 5. The hospital in *ER* doesn't exist in real life.
- \_\_\_ 6. Parminda Nagra is one of the actors in the movie *Bend it Like Beckham*.
- \_\_\_ 7. George Clooney appeared in *ER* only in 1999.
- \_\_\_ 8. None of *ER*'s cast from the year 1994 appears on the show these days
- \_\_\_ 9. Noah Wyle was eventually fired from *ER*.
- \_\_\_ 10. George Clooney was seen as a good actor when he was on *ER*.

b) Answer the following questions according to the passage.

- 1. Where does most of the filming of *ER* occur?
- 2. Why is it thought that people like *ER*?
- 3. In which year did Noah Wyle leave *ER*?
- 4. How did one of *ER*'s producers notice Parminder Nagra?
- 5. Who in the passage is still in *ER*?



8

Complete the following passage. Use the appropriate verb form, either gerund or infinitive, for the verbs in parentheses. One of the blanks can be both gerund and infinitive. Can you find which one?

### Lonely Larry and Loopy Loco

A short time ago, Larry decided (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (*buy*) a pet dog. He first thought of (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) a pet a long time ago, but he always delayed (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) so, because he knew that a pet was a lot of responsibility. Also, he didn't want (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (*risk*) (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (*annoy*) his neighbours with a very loud dog. But finally, he just couldn't stand (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (*live*) alone anymore.

While he was walking to the pet store, Larry thought about his idea of the perfect dog. He was hoping (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (*find*) a dog that was not too big and not too small. Also, he would like (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) a friendly dog. At the same time, he couldn't help (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (*remember*) that a quiet dog was necessary, because his neighbours could complain.







Before he arrived at the pet store, Larry was expecting (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (*find*) a lot of different dogs to choose from, but when he arrived, he had to give up (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (*think*) that. There was only one dog in the entire store! And it was a chihuahua—a very small, very excitable, and very loud dog! How could Larry ever manage (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (*enjoy*) (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (*live*) with this kind of dog? Larry talked to the pet store owner for a while, and the man offered (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) the dog back if there were any problems. And so, Larry agreed (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) the chihuahua.

Larry named the dog Loco, because he learnt quickly that it was crazy. When there was any sound outside, Loco started (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (*bark*), and kept (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (*bark*) for a long, long time. Larry tried (18) \_\_\_\_\_ (*control*) Loco, but nothing worked: Loco just couldn't stay calm. In a couple of days, the neighbours were warning Larry (19) \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) rid of the dog. Finally, Larry took Loco back to the pet store: he realized that he had to learn (20) \_\_\_\_\_ (*live*) on his own without a pet, after all.

9







### The Signs of the Zodiac

According to astrology, the position of constellations and planets at the time of our births affects our personality and future, and astrologers claim that people who were born around the same time share some common character traits. They group people under the 12 signs of the zodiac. Below are the signs and the character traits.

| <br><b>Aries</b><br>(20 Mar-20 Apr)                               | <br><b>Taurus</b><br>(21 Apr- 21 May)                 | <br><b>Gemini</b><br>(22 May-22 Jun)              | <br><b>Cancer</b><br>(23 Jun-22 Jul)            | <br><b>Leo</b><br>(23 Jul-22 Aug)                | <br><b>Virgo</b><br>(23 Aug-22 Sept)       |
|--|--|--|--|---|---|
| adventurous<br>competitive<br>confident<br>courageous<br>creative<br>energetic<br>impatient<br>impulsive<br>independent<br>quick-tempered<br>selfish | calm<br>determined<br>greedy<br>jealous<br>patient<br>persistent<br>pleasure-seeking<br>possessive<br>reliable<br>sensual<br>warmhearted | cunning<br>curious<br>impractical<br>inconsistent<br>indecisive<br>intelligent<br>lively<br>nervous<br>open<br>sociable<br>talkative | cautious<br>emotional<br>home-loving<br>imaginative<br>loyal<br>moody<br>protective<br>sensitive<br>shy<br>stubborn<br>weak-willed | attention-seeking<br>bossy<br>creative<br>enthusiastic<br>faithful<br>generous<br>glamorous<br>intolerant<br>lazy<br>proud<br>relaxed | critical<br>generous<br>gentle<br>logical<br>perfectionist<br>practical<br>quiet<br>sensitive<br>shy<br>solitary<br>sympathetic |



## ELS-WORKSHEETS

| <br><i>Libra</i><br>(23 Sept-22 Oct)                   | <br><i>Scorpio</i><br>(23 Oct-22 Nov)        | <br><i>Sagittarius</i><br>(23 Nov-22 Dec)                | <br><i>Capricorn</i><br>(23 Dec-21 Jan)            | <br><i>Aquarius</i><br>(22 Jan-20 Feb)              | <br><i>Pisces</i><br>(21 Feb-19 Mar)             |
|---|---|---|---|--|---|
| artistic<br>charming<br>diplomatic<br>fair<br>flirtatious<br>friendly<br>gullible<br>idealistic<br>indecisive<br>romantic<br>thoughtful | fair<br>intellectual<br>jealous<br>obsessive<br>obstinate<br>passionate<br>quiet<br>secretive<br>sensitive<br>shy<br>solitary | adventurous<br>careless<br>cheerful<br>curious<br>dreamy<br>energetic<br>honest<br>irresponsible<br>optimistic<br>restless<br>spontaneous | ambitious<br>careful<br>determined<br>disciplined<br>hard-working<br>humorous<br>pessimistic<br>proud<br>quiet<br>serious<br>stingy | clever<br>fair<br>generous<br>helpful<br>honest<br>independent<br>progressive<br>stubborn<br>talkative<br>unemotional<br>unpredictable | compassionate<br>friendly<br>helpful<br>imaginative<br>kind<br>loving<br>loyal<br>mysterious<br>private<br>secretive<br>weak-willed |

**A. The signs of the zodiac are divided into Air signs, Earth signs, Fire signs, and Water signs. According to the following information, discuss how you think the signs are divided.**

1. Air signs are typically associated with the following character traits: charming, clever, idealistic, impractical, indecisive, sociable, and talkative. The three Air signs are: \_\_\_\_\_ .
2. Earth signs are typically associated with the following character traits: calm, hard-working, patient, practical, quiet, reliable, shy, and solitary. The three Earth signs are: \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. Fire signs are typically associated with the following character traits: bossy, creative, energetic, imaginative, impatient, impulsive, irresponsible, optimistic, proud, quick-tempered, and spontaneous. The three Fire signs are: \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. Water signs are typically associated with the following character traits: emotional, imaginative, loyal, moody, mysterious, private, protective, secretive, sensitive, stubborn, and weak-willed. The three Water signs are: \_\_\_\_\_ .

**B. Use adjectives from the table of zodiac signs to complete the following descriptions of eight people born on the 28th day of different months. Then, using those adjectives, say which month they were born in and what zodiac sign they are.**

- a) Barry is very (1) \_\_\_\_\_ and never abandons his friends or family in times of trouble. He is also very (2) \_\_\_\_\_ and will do anything to defend his loved ones from harm. He is a very (3) \_\_\_\_\_ person, too, and so he doesn't like social occasions very much. Unfortunately, he can also be very (4) \_\_\_\_\_, and often refuses to change his mind when he has made a decision.
  - Barry was born on the 28th of (5) \_\_\_\_\_. His zodiac sign is (6) \_\_\_\_\_ .
- b) Heather is the most (1) \_\_\_\_\_ person that I know: she's probably never told a lie in her life. She's also a very (2) \_\_\_\_\_ person, and always wants to do things in her own manner. She is quite (3) \_\_\_\_\_ as well, and very interested in the newest and most radical ideas, movements, and fashions. One of her only problems is that she can be very (4) \_\_\_\_\_: you never know what she is going to do next, and that can make friendship with her difficult at times.
  - Heather was born on the 28th of (5) \_\_\_\_\_. Her zodiac sign is (6) \_\_\_\_\_ .

c) Kenneth is a very (1) \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_ person, and so he tends to be the life of any party that he goes to. He is also very (2) \_\_\_\_\_ about himself, and does not try to hide his feelings or thoughts from other people. Unfortunately, he is also a very (3) \_\_\_\_\_ person, and so he worries about everything unnecessarily. It is probably because of this that he is also very (4) \_\_\_\_\_ and has difficulty making decisions.

● Kenneth was born on the 28th of (5) \_\_\_\_\_. His zodiac sign is (6) \_\_\_\_\_.

d) Michelle is, in general, a very (1) \_\_\_\_\_ person, because she always sees the good side of any situation. She is also usually quite (2) \_\_\_\_\_, and she smiles and seems to be happy most of the time. Also, she is quite (3) \_\_\_\_\_, interested in lots of things, and always wants to know more. On the other hand, she can also be very (4) \_\_\_\_\_ sometimes, and doesn't always pay attention because she likes to daydream.

● Michelle was born on the 28th of (5) \_\_\_\_\_. Her zodiac sign is (6) \_\_\_\_\_.

e) Ron is a very (1) \_\_\_\_\_ person, and is always sad when a loved one is in pain; he always tries to support and aid that person, too, because he is very (2) \_\_\_\_\_. He is a very (3) \_\_\_\_\_ person as well, and always thinks up interesting ideas and stories and things. His only real fault is that he is quite a/an (4) \_\_\_\_\_ person, and almost never tells you very much about himself.

● Ron was born on the 28th of (5) \_\_\_\_\_. His zodiac sign is (6) \_\_\_\_\_.

f) Stephanie is (1) \_\_\_\_\_ and doesn't talk very much, but she is a very (2) \_\_\_\_\_ person, always listening to and trying to understand other people's problems. Sometimes, she tries to solve those problems using reason, because she is a very (3) \_\_\_\_\_ person, too. Unfortunately, she can be very (4) \_\_\_\_\_ as well, because she sometimes points out people's mistakes.

● Stephanie was born on the 28th of (5) \_\_\_\_\_. Her zodiac sign is (6) \_\_\_\_\_.

g) Una is a very (1) \_\_\_\_\_ person: in fact, her job is the most important thing in her life. Because of that, she is always very (2) \_\_\_\_\_, and tries her best not to make any mistakes. But at the same time, she is very (3) \_\_\_\_\_, and she tells some very funny jokes sometimes. Unfortunately, she can also be a bit (4) \_\_\_\_\_ sometimes, and doesn't like to share very much or to lend things to anybody.

● Una was born on the 28th of (5) \_\_\_\_\_. Her zodiac sign is (6) \_\_\_\_\_.

h) Will seems to be a very (1) \_\_\_\_\_ person, because he always takes care to wear very stylish clothes and wants to be sure that his hair is just right. But he is also quite (2) \_\_\_\_\_, and never seems to worry about anything or get tense. He is also very (3) \_\_\_\_\_, and never refuses to lend money to any friend that needs money. His only real problem is that he can sometimes be quite (4) \_\_\_\_\_, and he seems to enjoy telling other people what to do and how to act.

● Will was born on the 28th of (5) \_\_\_\_\_. His zodiac sign is (6) \_\_\_\_\_.

**C.** In groups, each student chooses several adjectives from the table of zodiac signs to describe his/her personality and tells them to the group. (Be sure to use some adjectives from outside of your sign, if there are any.) Then, according to those adjectives, the other members of the group try to guess that student's zodiac sign.

**DISCUSSION:** Discuss your opinions about the zodiac and personality: is there a connection, or isn't there?

## REVISION TEST 4

### Units 1-20

1. Shelley: What ..... that book *Frankenstein* like?  
Mary: I enjoyed it very much.  
A) does                      B) did  
C) has                        D) was
2. Ümit gave up ..... basketball while he was studying for his exams.  
A) play                      B) to play  
C) played                    D) playing
3. There is ..... cheese in the fridge, but we don't have ..... bread.  
A) a little/much          B) a lot of/many  
C) few/some                D) a few/any
4. My sister is going to buy a new mobile phone next month, and .....  
A) I think so                B) neither am I  
C) so am I                    D) I hope so
5. Stephen King ..... horror stories for more than 40 years.  
A) was written  
B) is writing  
C) has been written  
D) has been writing
6. Reese: Is Lindsey coming with her car?  
Fergal: ....., because she won't find anywhere to park it.  
A) Nor does she          B) I hope not  
C) She isn't, either        D) I'm afraid so
7. Attila ..... be your history teacher at school. He was a biology student at university.  
A) needn't                    B) can't  
C) doesn't                    D) may not
8. Don't worry; I think the problem with your credit ..... tomorrow.  
A) is solved                B) is going to solve  
C) will be solved          D) is solving
9. It is believed that the Phoenicians ..... around Africa 2,500 years ago.  
A) have sailed  
B) must be sailed  
C) could be sailed  
D) were able to sail
10. Rita ..... look like Lotte, but actually they are twins.  
A) doesn't                  B) isn't  
C) wasn't                    D) hasn't
11. Semih's mother is from Brazil, so he learnt ..... Portuguese fluently from her.  
A) speak                    B) speaking  
C) to speak                D) spoke
12. You ..... pay with a credit card, but we happily accept them.  
A) shouldn't                B) would rather not  
C) mustn't                    D) needn't
13. The boss has ..... problems with the plan, so we can start on it tomorrow.  
A) a little                    B) a few  
C) little                      D) few
14. Edward: Where is Thomas?  
Lawrence: He ..... be at the bank. He has to go there sometime this week.  
A) must                      B) can  
C) needs to                  D) is able to

15. Leyla prefers ..... her vegetables at the Thursday market because they are fresher there.

- A) buy                      B) to buy  
C) buys                     D) is buying

16. There ..... a lot of different German states in the eighteenth century.

- A) are                        B) was  
C) were                      D) is

17. Mehtap: ..... was your holiday in Alanya?

Olgun: It was really nice.

- A) Who                        B) When  
C) What                       D) How

18. I don't think Cengiz is ..... to move the washing machine.

- A) too strong                B) strong enough  
C) so strong                 D) as strong

19. Mario has been playing computer games ..... he got home from school.

- A) for                         B) since  
C) when                       D) from

20. You ..... turn your mobile phone off. The film is going to start very soon.

- A) would rather             B) are able to  
C) may                        D) should

21. The Volga isn't ..... as many of the rivers in Africa or Asia, but it is the longest river in Europe.

- A) so long                    B) the longest  
C) too long                  D) longer

22. Val Kilmer has played the role of Batman in a film, and ..... has Christian Bale.

- A) so                            B) either  
C) neither                     D) too

23. Hülya: Your breath smells horrible!  
Ruşen: I know. I ..... garlic.

- A) will eat  
B) have been eating  
C) am eaten  
D) have been eaten

24. Cesare ..... a speech to the class on Alexander Pope, but he ..... to.

- A) must be given/hasn't wanted  
B) can be given/isn't wanted  
C) would rather give/won't want  
D) has to give/doesn't want

25. The Battle of Austerlitz ..... in 1805 between France and Russia and Austria.

- A) has fought                B) fought  
C) was fought                D) has been fought

26. The lights and the TV are on, so somebody ..... be at home.

- A) may                        B) can  
C) must                        D) needs to

27. The actor Viggo Mortensen ..... speak English, Danish, and Spanish perfectly, and he knows another three languages quite well.

- A) can                         B) could  
C) may                        D) needs to

28. There are ..... types of snakes in the world, but most of them are not poisonous.
- A) any                      B) many  
C) much                     D) some
29. Connor left his briefcase at home, so he ..... back to collect it before the meeting started.
- A) can go                    B) has gone  
C) must go                 D) had to go
30. Switzerland isn't in the European Union, and ..... is Norway.
- A) neither                 B) so  
C) either                    D) too
31. Öykü has ..... returned from her trip to France.
- A) still                      B) last  
C) just                      D) when
32. Raymond ..... to the shop for me twice this morning. I ..... him to go again.
- A) has been running/might not ask  
B) has run/can't ask  
C) runs/mustn't ask  
D) ran/don't ask
33. Tuna: Why don't we go to the flower show this afternoon?  
Çiğdem: I'd rather ..... the match on TV.
- A) watch                    B) to watch  
C) watching                D) watched
34. .... take the ferry to Konak. It is more relaxing than using the bus.
- A) Let's                      B) Why don't we  
C) Could                     D) Shall we
35. I don't mind ..... the washing-up tonight.
- A) will do                    B) to do  
C) do                         D) doing
36. Lots of people believe that nuclear power is ..... dangerous to use.
- A) more                      B) too  
C) as                         D) enough
37. Hurşit: Is our school going to be closed tomorrow because of the snow?  
Irmak: ..... We're not going to get a day at home.
- A) Neither am I            B) Nor is he  
C) I'm afraid not         D) It isn't, either
38. There aren't ..... DVDs in this shop that I want to watch.
- A) much                     B) any  
C) some                     D) little
39. My brother couldn't play the piano when we were children, and .....; but we both can now.
- A) I can, too                B) I can't, either  
C) so could I                D) nor could I
40. You ..... the trash out later because it's forbidden at this time.
- A) are being thrown  
B) would prefer to throw  
C) will have to throw  
D) will be thrown

## TEST YOUR VOCABULARY 4

1. Othello thought Iago was ..... to him, but actually Iago was trying to destroy him.  
A) loyal                      B) innocent  
C) proud                      D) famous
2. It's not ..... for you to bring your own towel. The hotel will have clean ones for you in the room.  
A) fresh                      B) useless  
C) certain                      D) necessary
3. Our flight was ....., so we had to take a different airline to Abu Dhabi.  
A) informed                      B) reduced  
C) cancelled                      D) disagreed
4. The overcrowding in this city is becoming ..... . The government should build more houses.  
A) serious                      B) full  
C) anxious                      D) poor
5. Because of the ..... of rain next weekend, we are holding our wedding party indoors.  
A) attempt                      B) threat  
C) collapse                      D) depth
6. Malcolm is very shy. He doesn't feel ..... around large groups of people.  
A) unusual                      B) faithful  
C) dull                      D) comfortable
7. When Gregory was ..... with the evidence of his crime, he started to cry.  
A) concluded                      B) combined  
C) confronted                      D) compared
8. Acid rain ..... statues that are made of marble.  
A) ruins                      B) survives  
C) transports                      D) pours
9. Benjamin likes many different kinds of fruit, but he ..... likes strawberries.  
A) sweetly                      B) probably  
C) especially                      D) correctly
10. The great ancient city of Merv has remained ..... for many centuries.  
A) disgusted                      B) retired  
C) abandoned                      D) concerned
11. Deborah's paintings are good enough to be displayed in a/an ..... .  
A) explanation                      B) creation  
C) restriction                      D) exhibition
12. Ike and Russ jumped out of the airplane. ...., their parachutes didn't work.  
A) Speedily                      B) Unfortunately  
C) Basically                      D) Carelessly
13. I know he didn't mean to do it, but I can't ..... Oscar for killing my pet snake.  
A) regret                      B) allow  
C) forgive                      D) forget
14. I'm ..... of eating local food. Why don't we go to a Japanese restaurant for a change?  
A) tired                      B) broken  
C) mistaken                      D) damaged
15. Emrah told me that the thief was Ayşe, but I don't ..... him. He has lied to me before.  
A) trust                      B) commit  
C) secure                      D) meet
16. Some bananas are grown in Turkey, but most of them are ..... from abroad.  
A) returned                      B) imported  
C) shown                      D) planted
17. I'm going to tell my mother that I broke the refrigerator because she is more ..... than my father.  
A) annoying                      B) smiling  
C) developing                      D) understanding

18. Children under the age of 15 are ..... to see this film because of the violence in it.
- A) forbidden                      B) encouraged  
C) undone                          D) stopped
19. Kelly didn't want to walk far from the office for lunch, so she bought a sandwich in a ..... café.
- A) closed                          B) nearby  
C) primary                         D) rural
20. Richard doesn't like using modern medicine. He tries to heal himself .....
- A) naturally                        B) exactly  
C) recently                         D) highly
21. The minibus driver was not driving ..... enough, so I wasn't surprised when he had an accident.
- A) carefully                        B) suddenly  
C) distantly                         D) clearly
22. Because Sri Lanka is an island nation, it has no land ..... with any other country.
- A) coast                              B) edge  
C) border                            D) limit
23. The flag of Libya is ..... green. There is no other colour on it.
- A) mostly                          B) entirely  
C) rarely                             D) generally
24. Yalçın: Why don't you fly to Antalya?  
Seda: Because we can't ..... it.
- A) carry                              B) give  
C) afford                             D) cost
25. The elevator has been ....., so we don't have to walk up and down six flights of stairs anymore.
- A) influenced                        B) solved  
C) removed                         D) repaired
26. We may go to Büyükada on Monday, but it ..... on the weather.
- A) depends                         B) links  
C) finds                              D) trips
27. Pollution from factories and automobiles is another of the problems facing the .....
- A) disadvantage                    B) circle  
C) space                              D) environment
28. The death of his wife ..... Quentin very badly.
- A) cried                              B) affected  
C) felt                                 D) remembered
29. I had to wait in the queue for five hours at the municipality building. It was very .....
- A) damaging                        B) annoying  
C) filling                              D) willing
30. Vittore was ..... as he climbed out of the bank's window, but he wasn't the robber.
- A) dropped                         B) tried  
C) arrested                         D) fallen
31. Don't talk to Dean about Anna. He is trying to ..... thinking about her.
- A) cancel                             B) forbid  
C) separate                         D) avoid
32. Alice gives Paul a discount in her store because he is one of her favourite .....
- A) customers                        B) investments  
C) sales                               D) products
33. The rain is very ..... today, so we won't be able to sit on the terrace at the café.
- A) narrow                            B) wet  
C) sharp                              D) heavy
34. The Suez Canal was ..... to link the Mediterranean with the Red Sea.
- A) convinced                        B) conflicted  
C) contained                        D) constructed
35. The movie *Gladiator* is ..... in the 2nd-century Roman Empire.
- A) played                             B) set  
C) filmed                             D) predicted

# TEST YOURSELF 1

(Units 1-5)

## PART 1

Choose the right words from the choices on the right to complete the passage.

(2 points each)

Ivan Jones is (1) \_\_\_\_\_ young accountant (2) \_\_\_\_\_ Cardiff, the capital (3) \_\_\_\_\_ Wales. He (4) \_\_\_\_\_ in London (5) \_\_\_\_\_ Wednesday evening. He had a meeting (6) \_\_\_\_\_ the afternoon (7) \_\_\_\_\_ Friday, so he wanted (8) \_\_\_\_\_ Thursday sightseeing (9) \_\_\_\_\_ Thursday morning, Ivan went to Buckingham Palace (10) \_\_\_\_\_ see the Changing of the Guard. But when he arrived at (11) \_\_\_\_\_ Palace, (12) \_\_\_\_\_ were already thousands of tourists in (13) \_\_\_\_\_ of it, (14) \_\_\_\_\_ he didn't (15) \_\_\_\_\_. He (16) \_\_\_\_\_ a look at the Houses of Parliament and Big Ben and (17) \_\_\_\_\_ walked up Whitehall. In Trafalgar Square, Ivan bought (18) \_\_\_\_\_ pigeon food (19) \_\_\_\_\_ fed the pigeons. 'Now I (20) \_\_\_\_\_ hungry, (21) \_\_\_\_\_,' he thought. He had (22) \_\_\_\_\_ cheese and tomato sandwich and a Coke in a sandwich shop. After that, he walked to Piccadilly Circus, and there he sat (23) \_\_\_\_\_ on the steps under the statue *Eros*. He talked to (24) \_\_\_\_\_ young people. At the corner of Regent Street, he bought a postcard and wrote to (25) \_\_\_\_\_ girlfriend.

- |                 |             |              |
|-----------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. a) an        | b) some     | c) a         |
| 2. a) on        | b) from     | c) with      |
| 3. a) at        | b) of       | c) from      |
| 4. a) arrived   | b) went     | c) left      |
| 5. a) yesterday | b) last     | c) in        |
| 6. a) on        | b) at       | c) in        |
| 7. a) in        | b) at       | c) on        |
| 8. a) to spend  | b) spending | c) spend     |
| 9. a) At        | b) On       | c) In        |
| 10. a) for      | b) because  | c) to        |
| 11. a) a        | b) the      | c) some      |
| 12. a) there    | b) they     | c) theirs    |
| 13. a) behind   | b) middle   | c) front     |
| 14. a) so       | b) for      | c) because   |
| 15. a) stayed   | b) staying  | c) stay      |
| 16. a) has      | b) had      | c) is having |
| 17. a) before   | b) then     | c) after     |
| 18. a) some     | b) a        | c) any       |
| 19. a) because  | b) but      | c) and       |
| 20. a) do       | b) am       | c) will be   |
| 21. a) too      | b) don't I  | c) am I      |
| 22. a) some     | b) a        | c) many      |
| 23. a) to       | b) through  | c) down      |
| 24. a) a        | b) much     | c) some      |
| 25. a) his      | b) him      | c) her       |



**PART 2** (2 points each)

Choose the right answer.

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ a letter from Jenny this morning. She says in it that she \_\_\_\_\_ in Canada until the end of next month.

- A) am getting/stays
- B) got/is going to stay
- C) get/is staying
- D) will get/stayed

2. Put the cake in the oven \_\_\_\_\_ twenty minutes, then take it out and leave it to cool.

- A) for
- B) until
- C) about
- D) at

3. A: Mr. Rodgers from the bank telephoned about half an hour ago.

B: Right. I \_\_\_\_\_ him back immediately.

- A) call
- B) am calling
- C) will call
- D) am going to call

4. I'm going out in a minute \_\_\_\_\_ the dog for a walk.

- A) take
- B) took
- C) taking
- D) to take

5. A: \_\_\_\_\_ is the boss going to be away for?

B: Oh, not more than a week.

- A) How many
- B) How
- C) How old
- D) How long

6. A: Do you think Marie \_\_\_\_\_ her driving test tomorrow?

B: Perhaps, but she's very nervous about it at the moment.

- A) will pass
- B) is passing
- C) passes
- D) passed

7. He didn't tell you he was angry about the situation \_\_\_\_\_ he didn't want to have an argument.

- A) but
- B) because
- C) so
- D) and

8. A: \_\_\_\_\_ do you have to work on Sunday?

B: Once a month.

- A) What time
- B) How often
- C) Why
- D) Where

9. Don't go into the living room. Mum \_\_\_\_\_ the floor at the moment.

- A) polishes
- B) will polish
- C) polished
- D) is polishing

10. I'm sorry I \_\_\_\_\_ to the meeting yesterday. Unfortunately, my car \_\_\_\_\_ down.

- A) am not going to come/will break
- B) don't come/breaks
- C) won't come/is breaking
- D) didn't come/broke

11. A: \_\_\_\_\_ did it take you to get here?

B: Oh, about an hour.

- A) When
- B) How long
- C) How often
- D) What time

12. I'll be out of the office \_\_\_\_\_ an hour this afternoon, so please take any messages for me.

- A) until
- B) at
- C) for
- D) in

13. They \_\_\_\_\_ really slowly at the moment, so our order \_\_\_\_\_ ready on time.
- A) are working/isn't going to be  
 B) worked/wasn't  
 C) work/won't be  
 D) will work/isn't
14. We \_\_\_\_\_ the problems in the factory at the last meeting, but we \_\_\_\_\_ a solution for them.
- A) discuss/aren't going to find  
 B) discussed/didn't find  
 C) will discuss/won't find  
 D) are discussing/don't find
15. A: Why is he going to the head office next week?  
 B: \_\_\_\_\_ a computer course.
- A) Because                      B) To  
 C) At                              D) For
16. She \_\_\_\_\_ the manager at the interview last week, so she \_\_\_\_\_ the company's job offer.
- A) won't like/isn't accepting  
 B) didn't like/isn't going to accept  
 C) doesn't like/doesn't accept  
 D) isn't going to like/didn't accept
17. I \_\_\_\_\_ to go to a restaurant tonight because I'm tired, but we \_\_\_\_\_ out tomorrow night, instead.
- A) didn't want/ate  
 B) won't want/ate  
 C) am not wanting/eat  
 D) don't want/can eat
18. She \_\_\_\_\_ classical music, but she \_\_\_\_\_ time to go to concerts very often.
- A) enjoys/doesn't have  
 B) is enjoying/isn't having  
 C) will enjoy/didn't have  
 D) enjoyed/isn't going to have
19. He gives me a lift to work \_\_\_\_\_ morning, but generally, I come home by bus.
- A) last                              B) yesterday  
 C) every                            D) in
20. I'm not feeling very well, so I'm going upstairs \_\_\_\_\_ a nap.
- A) at                                B) for  
 C) in                                D) to
21. The Wilsons never go out in the evening on weekdays, \_\_\_\_\_?
- A) don't they                      B) aren't they  
 C) are they                        D) do they
22. Sally never takes sugar in her coffee, but her husband \_\_\_\_\_
- A) does.                            B) does, too.  
 C) doesn't he?                    D) does he?
23. Let's have a small picnic in the park \_\_\_\_\_ afternoon. Okay?
- A) last                              B) next  
 C) tomorrow                      D) yesterday
24. A: \_\_\_\_\_ someone help me with the filing job?  
 B: Sorry. Everybody is very busy at the moment.
- A) Did                                B) Do  
 C) Are                                D) Will
25. What a long film this is! It started \_\_\_\_\_ two o'clock and is still on.
- A) for                                B) at  
 C) since                              D) from

## TEST YOURSELF 2

(Units 1-10)

Choose the right answer. (2 points each)

- A: You like going to the theatre, \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: Not really, but I don't mind going occasionally.

A) don't you            B) aren't you  
C) do you                D) are you
- She really irritated me because she was whistling tunelessly \_\_\_\_\_ she was working.

A) since                 B) for  
C) while                 D) but
- I'm sorry. I've been really busy and I haven't typed your letters \_\_\_\_\_.

A) already               B) just  
C) since                 D) yet
- We've looked \_\_\_\_\_ for her, but we just can't find her.

A) nowhere              B) everybody  
C) everywhere         D) somewhere
- He's taking one of the company cars \_\_\_\_\_ he has to pick up some packages for the sales department.

A) while                 B) but  
C) when                 D) because
- Marion \_\_\_\_\_ in France this week, so Karen \_\_\_\_\_ all her calls for her.

A) skies/took  
B) skied/is going to take  
C) was skiing/takes  
D) is skiing/is taking
- We \_\_\_\_\_ these bricks because we \_\_\_\_\_ a wall at the end of our garden.

A) buy/build  
B) were buying/built  
C) have bought/are going to build  
D) will buy/have built
- I'm sure you \_\_\_\_\_ the course next week, and you \_\_\_\_\_ lots of new people.

A) will enjoy/will meet  
B) enjoyed/are meeting  
C) enjoy/are going to meet  
D) were enjoying/met
- Can we go to the new Indonesian restaurant? I \_\_\_\_\_ that sort of food before.

A) don't try  
B) haven't tried  
C) won't try  
D) am not trying
- Usually, our dog \_\_\_\_\_ all the time when he's alone in the house.

A) barks                 B) is going to bark  
C) has barked         D) is barking
- It's easy to cycle \_\_\_\_\_ the hill because you don't have to pedal, and you can go really fast.

A) outside               B) down  
C) at                      D) up
- A: \_\_\_\_\_ will you get the results of your tests?  
B: On Monday, I hope.

A) How                    B) How often  
C) Where                 D) When
- A: Have you \_\_\_\_\_ been to Jamaica?  
B: No, but I'd like to go one day.

A) yet                     B) always  
C) ever                    D) still

14. Pour the orange juice \_\_\_\_\_ a jug and take it to the table, please.

- A) into                      B) inside  
C) on                         D) at

15. He's had that car \_\_\_\_\_ 1973.

- A) for                        B) since  
C) in                         D) ago

16. There's something moving around \_\_\_\_\_ this cupboard. I hope it isn't a mouse.

- A) from                      B) at  
C) out of                    D) inside

17. There's \_\_\_\_\_ to go today. It's a public holiday and \_\_\_\_\_ is closed.

- A) everywhere/anybody  
B) somewhere/everybody  
C) nowhere/everywhere  
D) anywhere/somewhere

18. He will come tomorrow, \_\_\_\_\_ ? I hope so, because I've paid for his ticket.

- A) do I                        B) does he  
C) won't he                 D) haven't I

19. Jeremy has \_\_\_\_\_ delivered the invitations, so we don't need to do them.

- A) still                        B) ever  
C) yet                         D) already

20. A: How often do the trains to Manchester depart?  
B: Oh, there's one \_\_\_\_\_ half hour.

- A) last                        B) every  
C) at                         D) for

21. She \_\_\_\_\_ a member of the club since it \_\_\_\_\_ five years ago.

- A) has been/opened  
B) was/opens  
C) is/is opening  
D) will be/has opened

22. Bring those young plants into the house. It \_\_\_\_\_ freezing tonight. The temperature is dropping quickly at the moment, and the sun is still up.

- A) is  
B) was  
C) has been  
D) is going to be

23. I \_\_\_\_\_ the letter tomorrow, so you \_\_\_\_\_ it before the weekend, I expect.

- A) post/are going to get  
B) am posting/have got  
C) am going to post/will get  
D) have posted/get

24. I've missed my bus home. Oh well, \_\_\_\_\_ take a taxi.

- A) I'll                         B) I'd like  
C) can you                 D) why don't I

25. Julie came round \_\_\_\_\_ night and stayed for dinner.

- A) for                         B) since  
C) once                      D) last

26. A: He's remembered to pack the towels, \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B: No, I don't think so!

- A) does he                 B) hasn't he  
C) don't you              D) have I

27. A: \_\_\_\_\_ did she take her camera to work today?  
 B: To take some photos of her company's new offices.
- A) When                      B) What  
 C) How often                D) Why
28. She's worked in the advertising department of this company \_\_\_\_\_ just over six months.
- A) for                         B) already  
 C) still                        D) since
29. A: Would you like to come out with us tonight?  
 B: No, thanks. \_\_\_\_\_ at home. I feel quite tired.
- A) We've stayed  
 B) Did you stay  
 C) I'll stay  
 D) Why don't we stay
30. Oh, I see you \_\_\_\_\_ your room at last! It looks much better.
- A) have tidied  
 B) are going to tidy  
 C) tidy  
 D) will tidy
31. The council \_\_\_\_\_ down the old houses in the centre of town next February.
- A) were pulling  
 B) have pulled  
 C) pull  
 D) are going to pull
32. I \_\_\_\_\_ to take your books back to the library on Friday, but I can go this afternoon.
- A) forgot                      B) forget  
 C) have forgotten          D) am forgetting
33. She \_\_\_\_\_ on the beach when she \_\_\_\_\_ her ankle.
- A) is jogging/twists  
 B) will jog/is twisting  
 C) was jogging/twisted  
 D) jogs/will twist
34. He's leaving his job \_\_\_\_\_ round the world.
- A) is travelling                      B) to travel  
 C) has travelled                      D) travelled
35. A: \_\_\_\_\_ do they usually take to send out the information?  
 B: Ten days.
- A) How much                      B) How long  
 C) When                              D) How often
36. A: \_\_\_\_\_ has been in my office. Look, all the drawers are open.  
 B: Perhaps it was one of the cleaners.
- A) Anyone                      B) Everyone  
 C) No one                        D) Someone
37. He doesn't want \_\_\_\_\_ to eat, but he would like a cup of coffee.
- A) anything                      B) nothing  
 C) everywhere                      D) someone
38. She \_\_\_\_\_ up at 4 o'clock last night because the baby \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) is going to wake/has cried  
 B) has woken/will cry  
 C) woke/was crying  
 D) is waking/cries
39. There's a hole in the boat. We \_\_\_\_\_!
- A) will sink  
 B) sank  
 C) are going to sink  
 D) have sunk

40. A: Can you drive?  
 B: Well, I \_\_\_\_\_ my test, but I \_\_\_\_\_ only \_\_\_\_\_ a car out on my own twice so far.
- A) have passed/have...taken  
 B) pass/am...taking  
 C) am passing/was...taking  
 D) passed/will...take
41. The taxi hasn't arrived \_\_\_\_\_. I hope it won't be too late.
- A) ago                      B) yet  
 C) already                D) still
42. Sarah is going to be late today, \_\_\_\_\_? So let's start the meeting without her.
- A) won't we                B) are we  
 C) is she                    D) isn't she
43. There's an extremely large dog \_\_\_\_\_ round our garden at the moment.
- A) running                B) run  
 C) ran                        D) to run
44. I'm sure Ian \_\_\_\_\_ first prize in the art competition. He's an excellent artist.
- A) won                        B) will win  
 C) was winning          D) wins
45. We \_\_\_\_\_ already \_\_\_\_\_ up all the weeds, but we \_\_\_\_\_ the back garden yet because the ground is very wet.
- A) have...pulled/haven't dug  
 B) are...going to pull/weren't digging  
 C) will...pull/didn't dig  
 D) are...pulling/don't dig
46. She \_\_\_\_\_ out the washing when the rain \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) hangs/will start  
 B) has hung/starts  
 C) was hanging/started  
 D) will hang/was starting
47. Dad has gone to the hardware shop \_\_\_\_\_ some nails.
- A) to                            B) for  
 C) because                 D) since
48. The burglar alarm went off \_\_\_\_\_ we were walking round the art gallery.
- A) but                         B) while  
 C) since                      D) for
49. That church \_\_\_\_\_ here since the fourteenth century.
- A) has been                B) was  
 C) is                            D) will be
50. On the last night of our holiday, we \_\_\_\_\_ the sun go down and then \_\_\_\_\_ slowly back to our hotel.
- A) will watch/have walked  
 B) are watching/were walking  
 C) have watched/are going to walk  
 D) watched/walked

# TEST YOURSELF 3

(Units 1-15)

## PART ONE

Choose the right answer. (2 points each)

- It's very noisy at work these days because the local council \_\_\_\_\_ a new sports centre next to our office.  
A) builds                      B) was built  
C) is building                D) is built
- Her hair is \_\_\_\_\_ yours, but yours is in \_\_\_\_\_ condition.  
A) longer than/best  
B) as long as/better  
C) too long/as good as  
D) the longest/good
- Don't go into that room! It \_\_\_\_\_ decorated for tonight's party at the moment.  
A) was                          B) will be  
C) was being                 D) is being
- He won the race because, out of all the other drivers, he drove \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) more skilfully          B) the most skilfully  
C) too skilful                D) as skilful
- Can you help me? I'm not \_\_\_\_\_ to reach the plates on the top shelf.  
A) tall enough              B) as tall  
C) taller than                D) the tallest
- At a special ceremony last week, a number of soldiers \_\_\_\_\_ medals for their bravery during the battle.  
A) are awarded              B) have awarded  
C) were awarded            D) was awarding
- A: \_\_\_\_\_ is John's sister?  
B: Oh, she's much better now.  
A) Who                        B) How  
C) What                       D) Why
- Usually, the post \_\_\_\_\_ at ten o'clock, but it's now half past eleven and it \_\_\_\_\_ yet.  
A) is delivered/hasn't arrived  
B) is delivering/didn't arrive  
C) delivers/doesn't arrive  
D) was delivered/wasn't arriving
- I don't think she \_\_\_\_\_ for the job, because she doesn't have much experience.  
A) has accepted  
B) will be accepted  
C) accepts  
D) accepted
- He crashed into the lorry because he was driving \_\_\_\_\_ to stop in time.  
A) quick enough          B) more quickly  
C) the quickest              D) too quickly
- According to that sign, the roadwork here \_\_\_\_\_ until the end of next month.  
A) isn't going to be completed  
B) won't complete  
C) hasn't been completed  
D) didn't complete
- It's \_\_\_\_\_ warm today, so you won't need a jacket, but it's certainly not warm \_\_\_\_\_ to go swimming.  
A) too/very                  B) very/quite  
C) quite/enough            D) enough/too
- Alexander Fleming \_\_\_\_\_ penicillin by accident in 1928.  
A) was discovered          B) has discovered  
C) was discovering          D) discovered
- I get on very well with her because she has \_\_\_\_\_ sense of humour \_\_\_\_\_ me.  
A) the most/of                B) the same/as  
C) too/to                      D) as/as
- A: \_\_\_\_\_ is your new school like? Are you enjoying it?  
B: It's not bad, but the teachers are really strict.  
A) How                        B) Who  
C) What                       D) Where

16. A: Some packages \_\_\_\_\_ in reception.  
Are they yours?  
B: No, I think they are for the sales department.
- A) are leaving      B) have been left  
C) leave              D) have left
17. A: Candy seems \_\_\_\_\_ happy today.  
Has something happened?  
B: Yes, she's just heard that she's got the job she applied for.
- A) very                B) too  
C) enough            D) as
18. The lecture today wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ the one we had last week, was it?
- A) as interesting as  
B) more interesting  
C) interesting enough  
D) so interesting
19. The plants \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday, so you won't need to do anything while I'm away.
- A) have been watered  
B) watered  
C) were watering  
D) were watered
20. I'm sorry, but you're not \_\_\_\_\_ to go into that pub. You have to be sixteen and you're only fifteen.
- A) quite old          B) the oldest  
C) old enough        D) older than
21. I think the windows \_\_\_\_\_ this afternoon, so can you take everything off the window-sills, please?
- A) will be cleaned    B) have cleaned  
C) clean                D) are cleaning
22. It seems much \_\_\_\_\_ today \_\_\_\_\_ it was yesterday, doesn't it?
- A) too hot/to         B) so hot/so  
C) the hottest/of     D) hotter/than
23. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ to go out this evening. Let's just stay at home and watch a video.
- A) more tired than    B) less tired  
C) too tired            D) tired enough
24. This pan \_\_\_\_\_ for cooking chips earlier, so wash it well because it's quite oily.
- A) was used            B) will be used  
C) used                D) has used
25. A: You have a \_\_\_\_\_ accent \_\_\_\_\_ Patsy.  
B: Yes, that's because I'm from southern England and she's from Scotland.
- A) same/as            B) different/from  
C) more/than         D) too/to
26. That book \_\_\_\_\_ out of the library by someone else, so I'll have to wait to read it.
- A) has been taken    B) will take  
C) is taken            D) took
27. A: Your tie is very nice. What \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ of?  
B: Silk.
- A) has/made            B) will/be made  
C) does/make          D) is/made
28. A: What \_\_\_\_\_ your mother \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: A cake for my birthday.
- A) is/made  
B) does/make  
C) was/made  
D) is/making
29. Michael speaks \_\_\_\_\_ Jill, so it is \_\_\_\_\_ to understand him.
- A) as clear as/too easy  
B) the most clearly/easy  
C) more clearly than/easier  
D) clear enough/very easy
30. A: Have you seen Carol's new hairstyle?  
B: Yes. It has made her look \_\_\_\_\_ than she actually is.
- A) as young  
B) the youngest  
C) young enough  
D) much younger



## PART TWO

Ask *active* or *passive* questions using the question words and the verbs in the boxes. Pay attention to the verb form. (2 points for each = 40 points)

|              |                  |             |                 |                 |
|--------------|------------------|-------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| <i>How</i>   | <i>How often</i> | <i>When</i> | <i>How much</i> | <i>How long</i> |
| <i>Which</i> | <i>What</i>      | <i>Who</i>  | <i>Why</i>      | <i>How many</i> |

|              |                |             |                |                  |
|--------------|----------------|-------------|----------------|------------------|
| <i>catch</i> | <i>perform</i> | <i>live</i> | <i>do</i>      | <i>translate</i> |
| <i>give</i>  | <i>deliver</i> | <i>ride</i> | <i>collect</i> | <i>make</i>      |

1. A: \_\_\_\_\_ the furniture \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: Tomorrow afternoon.
  
2. A: \_\_\_\_\_ you that watch?  
B: My uncle. He bought it in Chicago.
  
3. A: \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ in Paris?  
B: I went there for my university education and stayed until 1990.
  
4. A: \_\_\_\_\_ the children \_\_\_\_\_ so much noise?  
B: Because their uncle is here at the moment and he's just taught them a silly game.
  
5. A: \_\_\_\_\_ money \_\_\_\_\_ at yesterday's Charity Ball?  
B: Not enough to carry out our project.
  
6. A: \_\_\_\_\_ the thief \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: It was simple. He dropped his wallet at the scene of the crime.
  
7. A: \_\_\_\_\_ Beethoven symphony \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow night?  
B: The fifth.
  
8. A: \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ your bike?  
B: Every day. I use it to go to school.
  
9. A: \_\_\_\_\_ to the house at the moment?  
B: Repairs to the roof.
  
10. A: \_\_\_\_\_ of his books \_\_\_\_\_ into Turkish so far?  
B: Only two, but I hear they are going to do another one soon.

**GOOD LUCK**

## TEST YOURSELF 4

(Units 1-20)

### A. Complete the sentences with the words in the box. (2 points each)

*little*      *a little*      *too much*      *enough*  
*few*      *a few*      *too many*      *any*

1. There weren't \_\_\_\_\_ chairs in the hall, so some of the members had to stand up for the whole meeting.
2. I think we can invest our money in this company. There's \_\_\_\_\_ risk of losing it.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ students wanted to go on the trip to the museum, so it was cancelled.
4. There was \_\_\_\_\_ traffic for me to get to the airport quickly.
5. I'm going to the stationer's to buy \_\_\_\_\_ envelopes. Do you need anything?
6. A: You'll have to drink your coffee black. There isn't \_\_\_\_\_ milk.  
B: Not even powdered milk?  
A: I'm afraid not.
7. Let's not go to the beach today. It's Sunday and there'll be \_\_\_\_\_ people. I don't like it when it's crowded, you know.
8. There's \_\_\_\_\_ cake on a plate in the kitchen, Joe. You can have it with your tea.

### B. Complete the sentences using the words in the box. (2 points each)

*must*      *had to*      *have had to*  
*can't*      *would rather*      *haven't been able to*  
*needn't*      *shouldn't*      *didn't have to*  
*might not*      *was able to*      *will have to*

1. A: Shall we go to Ankara by coach?  
B: Well, I \_\_\_\_\_ travel by train. It's safer.
2. We \_\_\_\_\_ live on very little money since my husband lost his job.
3. When I missed my usual train yesterday, I \_\_\_\_\_ take a taxi to work.
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ do much reading since I started this job.
5. The questions in the test were very difficult, but I \_\_\_\_\_ answer all of them correctly.
6. Fortunately, the train came on time, so I \_\_\_\_\_ wait for a long time.
7. A: Look. Is that Helen over there?  
B: It \_\_\_\_\_ be her. As far as I know, she is out of town at the moment.
8. Alan, you \_\_\_\_\_ do your sister's homework for her, or she won't learn anything.
9. A: Look how long the queue in front of the cinema is.  
B: The film \_\_\_\_\_ be really good, then.
10. A: Why isn't Peter coming with us to see the historical sites?  
B: I don't know. He \_\_\_\_\_ be interested in ruins.
11. Sarah, if you don't finish your homework now, you \_\_\_\_\_ spend the weekend studying at home.
12. I \_\_\_\_\_ go to bed early tonight, because there's no school tomorrow and I can sleep late.

**C. Choose the right answer. (2 points each)**

1. Please don't \_\_\_\_\_ any noise. I'm trying \_\_\_\_\_ my homework.  
 A) do/do                      B) make/to do  
 C) making/making      D) doing/to make
  
2. We \_\_\_\_\_ here for half an hour, but no one \_\_\_\_\_ to take our order.  
 A) have been sitting/has come  
 B) are sitting/has been coming  
 C) have sat/was coming  
 D) were sitting/will come
  
3. She always drives \_\_\_\_\_ on busy roads.  
 A) more careful      B) careful  
 C) carefully          D) as careful as
  
4. Look at that sign, Jill: PLEASE DO NOT FEED THE ANIMALS. So you \_\_\_\_\_ give them anything to eat.  
 A) don't have to      B) mustn't  
 C) couldn't          D) needn't
  
5. A: How old is Jennifer's daughter?  
 B: She \_\_\_\_\_ about one year old, because she has just started to walk.  
 A) might not be      B) has been  
 C) shouldn't be      D) must be
  
6. A: How much cake would you like, Tom?  
 B: Oh, only one \_\_\_\_\_, please.  
 A) slice                  B) loaf  
 C) bowl                  D) jar
  
7. Would you \_\_\_\_\_ to go on holiday abroad this year?  
 A) mind                  B) think  
 C) rather                D) like
  
8. He forgot \_\_\_\_\_ his camera with him.  
 A) taking                B) took  
 C) to take                D) take
  
9. I'm not happy with our dishwasher. It \_\_\_\_\_ down twice since we bought it.  
 A) was breaking      B) has broken  
 C) has been breaking      D) broke
  
10. In the future, much of our energy \_\_\_\_\_ from the sun.  
 A) may come          B) has had to come  
 C) was coming        D) came
  
11. I very much like gardening, but \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A) so is my husband  
 B) nor is my husband  
 C) my husband doesn't, either  
 D) my husband doesn't
  
12. In 1957, the first man-made satellite \_\_\_\_\_ into space by the Russians, but the first men on the moon \_\_\_\_\_ Americans.  
 A) sent/was  
 B) have sent/have been  
 C) have been sent/has been  
 D) was sent/were
  
13. A: Do we have any milk for the cat?  
 B: \_\_\_\_\_ I used all of it for the pudding.  
 A) Neither do I.      B) I'm afraid not.  
 C) I think so.        D) I haven't, either.
  
14. When the Johnsons \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money on the lottery, they \_\_\_\_\_ on a world tour.  
 A) were winning/have gone  
 B) were won/were going  
 C) won/went  
 D) win/have gone
  
15. A: Do you need anything else from the shops?  
 B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ bread, please.  
 A) a loaf of              B) a few  
 C) too many            D) a box of

16. When the accident happened, I \_\_\_\_\_ a lorry.

- A) have been overtaking
- B) was overtaking
- C) overtake
- D) have overtaken

17. A: Carol looks really tired.

B: Yes. She \_\_\_\_\_ for the photographer all afternoon.

- A) will pose                      B) is posing
- C) has been posing      D) is going to pose

18. I expect \_\_\_\_\_ a letter from Derek soon.

- A) to get                              B) getting
- C) got                                      D) get

19. A: Excuse me. Would you mind \_\_\_\_\_ the last sentence? I couldn't catch it.

B: No, of course not.

- A) to repeat                      B) repeated
- C) repeat                              D) repeating

20. A: Do you think Paul and Tina will be able to come to the party tomorrow?

B: \_\_\_\_\_ They have no other arrangements.

- A) I'm afraid not.      B) Neither do they.
- C) I think so.                      D) They will, too.

21. A: Haven't you finished \_\_\_\_\_ those letters yet?

B: No, there's one more left.

- A) written                              B) to write
- C) writing                                      D) wrote

22. Jill hasn't got a camera and I don't think Linda has got one, \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) neither                              B) either
- C) too    D) nor

23. Let's stop and go home. This work is not urgent. It \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.

- A) can be done              B) has been done
- C) has to do                      D) will do

24. A: When we get to the zoo, \_\_\_\_\_ we go to see the birds first?

B: No, \_\_\_\_\_ visit the lions first.

- A) let's/why don't we
- B) could/how about
- C) shall/let's
- D) can/I'd like

25. Mary's aim is \_\_\_\_\_ a world-famous writer.

- A) become                              B) became
- C) to becoming                      D) to become

26. My brother is coming back from the USA next week, so I'm really looking forward \_\_\_\_\_ him after so many months.

- A) to see                                      B) to seeing
- C) seeing                                      D) see

27. It was a really funny joke. I couldn't help \_\_\_\_\_ for ages afterwards.

- A) laughing                              B) to laugh
- C) laugh    D) laughed

28. The first electronic computer was made in the USA, \_\_\_\_\_?

- A) did they                              B) weren't they
- C) wasn't it                              D) did it

29. Computers \_\_\_\_\_ think on their own. They \_\_\_\_\_ by people.

- A) mustn't/must programme
- B) needn't/are programming
- C) shouldn't/are able to programme
- D) can't/have to be programmed

30. A: What's \_\_\_\_\_ animal in the world?  
B: On land or in the sea?

- A) as big as                              B) the biggest
- C) bigger    D) too big